## RF-Engineering

German: Hochfrequenztechnik

Kurs: Tel17NT

12. September 2019

## Inhaltsverzeichnis

1 RF Basics ..... 4
2 An Overview over RF-Systems ..... 10
3 Fields \& Waves ..... 21
3.1 Maxwell's Equations ..... 21
3.2 MWEq. Details ..... 22
3.3 Media ..... 24
3.4 Waves ..... 26
4 Transmission Line Theory - Introduction ..... 32
4.1 Stubs ..... 38
4.2 Smith Diagram ..... 39
5 Practical Transmission Lines ..... 42
5.1 Non-Planar Waveguides ..... 43
5.2 Planar Waveguides on PCB ..... 69
5.3 Coupling between Transmission Lines ..... 74
5.4 PCB-Testing ..... 76
6 2-Port and S-Parameters ..... 77
6.1 S-Parameters ..... 77
6.2 Signal Flow Graphs ..... 81
7 Matching Networks and their Design ..... 85
8 Antennas ..... 92
8.1 Maxwell's Equations ..... 93
8.2 Antenna Parameters ..... 99
8.3 Linear Antennas ..... 106
8.4 Wave Propagation ..... 110
8.5 Phased Arrays ..... 113
8.6 Yagi Uda ..... 115
8.7 Planar Antennas ..... 118
8.8 Small Antennas ..... 123
8.9 Mobile Antennas ..... 127
8.10 Examples in Mobile Phones ..... 129
8.11 Aperture Antennas ..... 131
8.12 Reflector ..... 135
9 Passives ..... 140
9.1 Elements ..... 140
9.2 Attenuators ..... 143
9.3 Couplers ..... 144
9.4 Filters ..... 146
10 Transistors ..... 163
10.1 FET ..... 167
10.2 HEMT ..... 171
11 Linear Amplifier ..... 173
11.1 Stability ..... 174
11.2 Power Gain ..... 176
11.3 LNA ..... 179
12 Noise ..... 183
12.1 Noise Basics ..... 183
12.2 Thermal Noise ..... 185
12.3 2-Port-Noise-Figure ..... 191
12.4 Noise Temperature and Measurement ..... 194
12.5 Chain Formula ..... 196
13 Non-Linearities ..... 197
13.1 Linear Amplifiers ..... 197
13.2 Intermodulation ..... 201
13.3 Intercept Points ..... 203
13.4 Chain Formulas ..... 205
14 Power Amplifier ..... 206
14.1 Classes A,B,C ..... 206
14.2 Switching Amplifiers ..... 216
15 Mixers ..... 217
15.1 Model ..... 217
15.2 Structure ..... 220
15.3 Examples ..... 225
15.4 Harmonic Balance ..... 227
15.5 More Diodes ..... 230
15.6 FET/BJT ..... 236
15.7 Noise ..... 237
16 An Introduction to Radar ..... 241
17 Oscillators ..... 253
17.1 Negative Resistance Oscillator ..... 253
17.2 Transistor-Negative Resistance Oscillators ..... 255
17.3 Dielectric Resonator ..... 262
17.4 Phase-Noise ..... 264

## 1 RF Basics

## What to Expect

- Gives you an overview, why RF is a little bit different than "classical" electronics and what the specifics are.
- Prepares a common ground for RF engineering
- Explains important concepts in RF
- You will learn some aspects of the common language and basic concepts RF-engineers use to make their life easier
- Introduces dBm
- Introduces frequency usage
- Fundamentals on RF-measurements


## The Spectrum



## Frequency Useage I

Frequency and band on a coarse scale

| Frequency | Designation | Example Use |
| ---: | :--- | :--- |
| $3-30 \mathrm{kHz}$ | Very Low F. (VLF) | Navigation, Sonar |
| $30-300 \mathrm{kHz}$ | Low F. (LF) | Radio, Navigation Aids |
| $300-3000 \mathrm{kHz}$ | Medium F. (MF) | AM broadcasting, "Grenzwelle", Maritime communication |
| $3-30 \mathrm{MHz}$ | High F. | Amateur radio, short wave, citizens Band, RFID |
| $30-300 \mathrm{MHz}$ | Very High F. (VHF) | FM broadcasting, Television, Air traffic |
| $300-3000 \mathrm{MHz}$ | Ultrahigh F. (UHF) | Television, satellite comm., surveillance radar, ISM- |
| $3-30 \mathrm{GHz}$ | Superhigh F. (SHF) | Applications, Microwave ovens, cellular |
| $30-300 \mathrm{GHz}$ | Extreme High F. (EHF) | TV |
|  |  | Wheather radar, automotive radar, microwave links, automotive radar, satellite |
| rimental, short range communication links, expe- |  |  |

## Frequency Useage II

Typical Communication Bands (in Europe)

| Application | Frequency/MHz | Bandw. | Modulation |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | :--- |
| Car-Key (ISM) | $433.05-434.79$ | narrow | ASK/ FSK |
| GSM (D) | $880-935$ | 200 kHz | GMSK |
| GSM (E) | $1710-1880$ | 200 kHz | GMSK |
| WLAN (802.11b,g) | $2400-2483.5$ | to 40 MHz | g:OFDM/QAM |
| WLAN (802.11a) | $5150-5725$ | to 40 MHz | OFDM/QAM |
| UMTS/ W-CDMA | $1920-2170$ | 5 MHz | CDMA/QAM |
| LTE | $2500-2690$ | to 20 MHz | OFDMA, SC-FDMA |
| Bluetooth | $2400-2483.5$ | ca. 1 MHz | FHSS/GFSK |

## Governed by Maxwell's Equations

And God said

|  | Differential Form | Integral Form |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Ampere's circuit law | $\nabla \times \vec{H}=\vec{J}+\frac{\partial \vec{D}}{\partial t}$ | $\oint_{\partial S} \vec{H} d l=I_{f, S}+\frac{\partial \Phi_{D, S}}{\partial t}$ |
| Faraday's law | $\nabla \times \vec{E}=-\frac{\partial \vec{B}}{\partial t}$ | $\oint_{\partial S} \vec{E} d l=-\frac{\partial \Phi_{B, S}}{\partial t}$ |
| Gauss' law (el.) | $\nabla \cdot \vec{D}=\rho$ | $\oiint_{S} \vec{D} d A=Q$ |
| Gauss' law (mag.) | $\nabla \cdot \vec{B}=0$ | $\oiint_{S} \vec{B} d A=0$ |

And there was light.

## Consider High-Frequency-Effects

- Elements are not "lumped" anymore:
physical dimensions of elements (e.g. resistors, caps, sometimes transistors, most importantly cables and interconnects) must be considered
- Parasitics of elements must be considered
- Power is dominant measurement quantity
- Measurement equipment has effect on the device under test (DUT) (high-ohmic vs. $50 \Omega$ )
- Field extension and (ir)radiation must be considered (coupling and antennas)


## Think like an RF-Engineer!

Think in

- Waves and wavelength $\lambda$ (or frequency $f$ ) $\lambda=\frac{c_{0}}{\sqrt{\epsilon_{\text {eff }}}} \frac{1}{f}$
$c_{0}$ Free space speed of light $\approx 300,000 \mathrm{~km} / \mathrm{s}$
$\epsilon_{e f f}$ Effective dielectric coefficient (tbd later)
Remember: electromagnetic wave at 10 GHz has a free space wavelength of about $30 \mathrm{~mm}, 1 \mathrm{GHz}$ of 30 cm...
- Wavelength in Material (e.g. ceramics with permittivity $\epsilon_{r}>10$ ) much shorter
- It's all about matching, it's all about resonance
- Power and the unit dBm (at least mostly)
- Power-Reflection and transmission versus voltage and current


## Skin-Effect



- Because of induction, magnetic field pushes current to the edges of material
- With higher frequency, current is only supported at the boundaries of conductors
- Skin-depth $\delta=\sqrt{\frac{2}{\omega \mu_{0} \mu_{r} \sigma}}$ with $\mu$ permeability, $\sigma$ conductivity of the material.
- Skin-depth defines point, where current density is decreased by $1 / e$
- This is why conductivity (especially at surfaces) is important


## Material Parameters, Skin-Depth

Skin-depth $\delta=1 / \sqrt{\pi f \mu_{0} \mu_{r} \sigma}$

| Material | $\mu \Omega \mathrm{cm}$ | $\mu_{r}$ | $\delta \sqrt{f} /(\mu \mathrm{m} \sqrt{\mathrm{GHz}})$ |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| Aluminum | 2.65 | 1 | 2.59 |
| Copper | 1.7 | 1 | 2.1 |
| Iron | 9.66 | 5000 | 0.07 |
| Silver | 1.59 | 1 | 2 |
| Gold | 2.44 | 1 | 2.5 |
| $\mu$-Metal | 55 | 50000 | 0.05 |

[^0]
## Skin-Depth



Skin-depth vs. frequency (logarithmic!) for various materials

## THE Unit: dB (dezi-Bel)

Measure of relative quantities

- Power-relation: $a_{P}=10 \log \frac{P_{1}}{P_{2}}$
- Voltage-relation: $a_{U}=20 \log \frac{U_{1}}{U_{2}}$ (equal impedance levels on Port 1 and 2)

For absolute quantities a reference level must be introduced:

- Power (relative to 1 mW ): $P[\mathrm{dBm}]=10 \log \frac{P}{1 \mathrm{~mW}}$
- Voltage (relative to $1 \mu \mathrm{~V}$ ): $U[\mathrm{~dB} \mu]=20 \log \frac{U}{1 \mu \mathrm{~V}}$
dB: What's the Ratio?

| dB | Power Scale | Amplitude Scale |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 100 | 10000000000.0 | 100000.0 |
| 90 | 1000000000.0 | 31620.0 |
| 80 | 100000000.0 | 10000.0 |
| 70 | 10000000.0 | 3162.0 |
| 60 | 1000000.0 | 1000.0 |
| 50 | 100000.0 | 316.2 |
| 40 | 10000.0 | 100.0 |
| 30 | 1000.0 | 31.62 |
| 20 | 100.0 | 10. |
| 10 | 10.0 | 3.162 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 |

dB: What's the Ratio?

| $d B$ | Power Scale | Amplitude Scale |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| 0 | 1 | 1 |
| -10 | 0.1 | 0.3162 |
| -20 | 0.01 | 0.1 |
| -30 | 0.001 | 0.03162 |
| -40 | 0.0001 | 0.01 |
| -50 | 0.00001 | 0.003162 |
| -60 | 0.000001 | 0.001 |
| -70 | 0.0000001 | 0.0003162 |
| -80 | 0.00000001 | 0.0001 |
| -90 | 0.000000001 | 0.00003162 |
| -100 | 0.0000000001 | 0.00001 |

Calculate dB in your Head

| dB | Sum/Difference of $10,5,3$ | Mult., Div. | Linear |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | Memorize |  | 1 |
| 1 | $10-3-3-3$ | $10 / 2 / 2 / 2$ | 1.25 |
| 2 | $5-3$ | $3 / 2$ | 1.5 |
| 3 | Memorize |  | 2 |
| 4 | $10-3-3$ | $10 / 2 / 2$ | 2.5 |
| 5 | Memorize |  | 3 |
| 6 | $3+3$ | $2 * 2$ | 4 |
| 7 | $10-3$ | $10 / 2$ | 5 |
| 8 | $5+3$ | $3 * 2$ | 6 |
| 9 | $3+3+3$ | $2 * 2 * 2$ | 8 |
| 10 | Memorize |  | 10 |

## A Word on Measurement

Some simplified words of caution on measuring within RF-circuits

|  | DC | RF |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Resistance | Meg-Ohms | 50 Ohms |
| Probe | Does not influence | Antenna, high load |
| Quantity | Voltage and Current | Power/ S-parameter |
| Where? | where-ever | Only at defined points |
| Open cover | does not matter | may disturb signal |

## References

## 2 An Overview over RF-Systems

## What to Gain

- Gives you just a brief overview how RF systems look like
- Introduces main building blocks
- Explains what to watch out for
- Gives you a red line throughout the entire course

You will be enabled to

- Identify building block
- Explain why they are there


## The Transceiver

Block-diagram of a typical transceiver circuit


## The Antenna

- Most visible part of the system
- Sometimes very critical part (e.g. because of space)
- Mainly the antenna is responsible for RF-techniques being called "black magic"
- In the end: Just a piece of conductor being smartly formed for effective irradiation or reception of electromagnetic waves.


## Antennas



Different antennae pictures GPL, http://de.wikipedia.org

## Example: SAT-TV-LNA



A dismantled Low Noise Amplifier for Sattelite TV

Example: Evolution of Mobile Communication


Nokia NKW1X (CDMA) with Duplexer (left) Siemens GSM C35 (right)

## Example2: Evolution of Mobile Communication



Blackberry 7130 (still all GSM) (left) ad HTC TRIN100 (3G, Multiband) (right)

## More Pictures



Amplifier (and periphery) for the KU-Band (12-18 GHz) (Source Wikipedia, GPL)

## Basic Radar



The parts of a Radar-System

Radar: Modern and Civilian


Radar application and MMIC (around 100 GHz ) and system for 24 GHz .

## The Duplexer



- Depending on System architecture this can be completely different building block
- Frequency Division Duplex (FDD): Differentiate between transmit (TX) and receive (RX by frequency: Use a filter structure (Diplexer))
- Time Division Duplex (TDD). Switch between RX and TX and have them at different times: Use a switch (or a circulator)
- In general very critical (passive) element, because the first (RX) or the last (TX) element!


## Simple Amplifiers

Low Noise Amplifier (LNA)

- Works on very low power: Linearity and efficiency often of second priority
- Determines sensitivity of the entire system
- Small element
- Careful: can be overdriven or even destroyed!


## Power Amplifier (PA)

- High-Power delivering entity
- Linearity an issue
- Efficiency (how DC-power gets converted into RF power) is important
- Thermal considerations
- Typically expensive component


## Mixer Overview



Some parameters of the mixer

- Nonlinear operation (converts the frequency)
- Often loss of power
- Requires Local Oscillator (LO) frequency and power
- Non-ideal: leaks LO power in all directions


## Mixer Simple How To



Very simple mixer with only one diode as mixing element

- DC bias responsible for bringing diode into right working point
- RF and LO must be combined and lead to the diode
- Matching tedious. Must be done for RF, LO and Intermediate frequency (IF)
- Filter appropriately


## Bandpass Filter

- Why?
- Limit Noise bandwidth
- Limit external disturbances (e.g. co-siting with different standards)
- Enable coexistence of different systems
- Filter out unwanted leakages (Harmonics/ Mirror, LO, IF, ...)
- Dimensioning is sometimes very critical in pass- and stop-band!
- What is it?
- Ceramics filter
- Distributed ((micro-strip) line elements)
- Cavity resonators
- Lumped Elements (Inductors, Caps)


## Automatic Gain Control (AGC)



Dynamic range is vital in modern communication systems e.g. in motion, in fading channel conditions (urban environment)

- AGC required to adjust gain, thus save e.g. bits (width) in ADC/DAC, drive ADC at optimum possible level
- receiving device communicates to sender to adjust power ( $x \mathrm{~dB}$ steps up or down)


## Oscillator

Simple truth, every FM-radio listener knows: Transmitter/ Broadcaster and receiver must be (stably) tuned to the same frequency!

- Oscillator is essentially feed back amplifier, that then of course starts to oscillate
- Stabilization must be taken care of either
- Lock to external source (Phase locked loop), can be on same board or as far away as GPS satellites are
- Feedback only distinctly via resonator (crystal, dielectric resonator, cavity, LC?)
- Voltage Controlled Oscillator (VCO): Frequency changes with voltage applied at some port
- PLL is control of VCO by comparing (and adjusting) according to external reference


## Modulator/ Demodulator



- Essentially very similar to mixer
- Task: Mix signal down to mid-frequency zero (baseband) or: extract the original signal (demodulator). Other way around: mix baseband signal up to some RF or IF (modulator)
- Mod/ demod shown here for complex (I/Q) digital signals, simpler for "old" amplitude (AM) and frequency (FM) modulation


## Analog Digital Conversion (and Vice Versa)

- Interface between digital and analog signals
- Parameters:
- Numbers of bits (digits) describe dynamic range ( 1 bit is factor of 2, equals 6 dB (voltage!)), thus 16 bit wide DAC/ADC has dynamic range of 96 dB
- Speed: Determines sample rate and thus bandwidth allowed for converted (baseband) signal $f_{\max }=\frac{1}{2 T_{s}}$
- Usually oversampling and subsequent digital filtering utilized


## Evolution in Front-End Integration

Dual band
>200 RLC
10 IC
5 Filter


Triple band
100 RLC
3 IC
3 Filter


2003
2006
2008
2010

## And the Block-Diagram



Multiband, multi-mode cellular phone [1].


Evolution to LTE and 4G [2].

## Concepts of Software Defined Radio

Illustration of basic ideas:

- Have analog/ Digital conversion at intermediate frequency (IF)
- Do modulation/ demodulation and filtering (etc.) in Digital Signal Processor (DSP)
- Advantage
- Flexible adaption to different standards (if only processing power permits)
- Simpler RF, digital signal processing mathematically correct, does not need (so much) calibration
- more advanced algorithms applicable (e.g. full MIMO)
- Disadvantage
- High sampling/ conversion speed/bandwidth required
- High processing power required, may be costly


## Smart Antenna and MIMO

What is it?

- Multiple single antenna signals combined smartly to one, so that focusing on only one partner/ in only one direction


## How is it done?

- Have a multitude of transmit/ receive paths, mostly shared oscillators required for stable phase coupling
- Amplitude and phase adjust signal from/ to each single antenna element
- In digital domain: use digital beam forming combining, just complex add and multiply


## References

[1] Agilent Technologies. 3GPP Long Term Evolution: System Overview, Product Development, and Test Challenges. Techn. Ber. Application note 5989-8139EN under http:www.agilent.com. Agilent Technologies, 2009.
[2] Kevin Walsh und Jackie Johnson. 3G/4G Multimode Cellular Front End Challenges Part 2. Techn. Ber. http://www.rfmd.com. RFMD, 2011.

## 3 Fields and Waves

## What you Learn

- See how electromagnetic fields are built
- Get an expression on fields and waves in homogeneous media
- See how fields and waves interact with matter and behave at boundary conditions
- Be able to draw fields and waves principally


### 3.1 Maxwell's Equations

## Governed by Maxwell's Equations

And God said

|  | Differential Form | Integral Form |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Ampere's circuit law | $\nabla \times \vec{H}=\vec{J}+\frac{\partial \vec{D}}{\partial t}$ | $\oint_{\partial S} \vec{H} d \vec{l}=I_{f, S}+\iint_{S} \frac{\partial \vec{D}}{\partial t} d \vec{s}$ |
| Faraday's law | $\nabla \times \vec{E}=-\frac{\partial \vec{B}}{\partial t}$ | $\oint_{\partial S} \vec{E} d \vec{l}=-\iint_{S} \frac{\partial \vec{B}}{\partial t} d \vec{s}$ |
| Gauss' law (el.) | $\nabla \cdot \vec{D}=\rho$ | $\oiint_{\partial V} \vec{D} d \vec{s}=Q$ |
| Gauss' law (mag.) | $\nabla \cdot \vec{B}=0$ | $\oiint_{\partial V} \vec{B} d \vec{s}=0$ |

$\overline{\text { And there was light. }}$

## Maxwell's Equations

Maxwell' equations [4, 1, 3] for time-harmonic fields (i.e. $f(t) \propto e^{-j \omega t}, \omega$ circular frequency $2 \pi f$ )

$$
\begin{array}{c|c}
\text { Three dimensions } & \text { One dimension (z) } \\
\hline \nabla \times \vec{H}=\mathrm{j} \omega \vec{D}+\vec{J} & -\frac{\partial H_{y}}{\partial z}=\mathrm{j} \omega D_{x}+J_{x} \\
& \frac{\partial H_{x}}{\partial z}=\mathrm{j} \omega D_{y}+J_{y} \\
\nabla \times \vec{E}=-\mathrm{j} \omega \vec{B} & -\frac{\partial E_{y}}{\partial z}=-\mathrm{j} \omega B_{x} \\
& \frac{\partial E_{x}}{\partial z}=-\mathrm{j} \omega B_{y} \\
\nabla \cdot \vec{D}=\rho & \frac{\partial D_{z}}{\partial z}=\rho \\
\nabla \cdot \vec{B}=0 & \frac{\partial B_{z}}{\partial z}=0 \\
\hline
\end{array}
$$

| $\nabla$ | $\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\right)^{T}$ | $\vec{E}$ | electric field |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\vec{D}$ | electric flux density | $\vec{H}$ | magnetic field |
| $\vec{B}$ | magnetic flux density | $\vec{J}$ | electric current density |
| $\rho$ | electric charge density |  |  |

## Material Equations

Constants from mother nature

| $\epsilon_{0}$ | $8.8541810^{-12} \mathrm{As} /(\mathrm{Vm})$ <br> $\approx 10^{-9} /(36 \pi) \mathrm{As} /(\mathrm{Vm})$ | Permittivity |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\epsilon_{r}$ | $2 \ldots 12$ | PCB, Semiconductor |
|  | $\ldots 80$ | (usual) Ceramics |
|  | $\ldots 1000 s$ | (high Diel.Const.) Ceramics |
|  | $\approx 80$ | $\approx 1000 \mathrm{~s}$ |
| $\mu_{0}$ | $4 \pi 10^{-7} \mathrm{Vs} /(\mathrm{Am})$ | Water (in GHz range) |
|  | $1.2566410^{-6} \mathrm{Vs} /(\mathrm{Am})$ | Metal |
| $\mu_{r}$ | 1 | Permeability |
|  | 700 | Mostly for us <br>  <br>  |

$\vec{D}=\epsilon_{0} \epsilon_{r}(\omega) \vec{E}, \quad \vec{B}=\mu_{0} \mu_{r}(\omega) \vec{H}$ Continuity equation (from MWeq.) $\mathrm{j} \omega \rho+\nabla \cdot \vec{J}=0$.

### 3.2 Details on Maxwell's Equations

## Gauss's Law, Electric Flux

$$
\nabla \cdot \vec{D}=\rho
$$

$$
\oint_{\partial V} \vec{D} d \vec{s}=Q
$$

- Electric flux has charge (density) as source
- Electric flux (Field) lines can start at charge
- If no charge ( $\rho=Q=0$ ) electric filed has no source



## Gauss's Law, Magnetic Field

$$
\nabla \cdot \vec{B}=0
$$

$$
\oint_{\partial V} \vec{B} d \vec{s}=0
$$

- Magnetic flux (magnetic fields) have no sources (unless theoretically introduced)
- Magnetic field lines have no beginning an no end, they must be closed, maybe at infinity



## Ampere's Circuit Law

$$
\nabla \times \vec{H}=\mathrm{j} \omega \vec{D}+\vec{J}
$$

$$
\oint_{\partial S} \vec{H} d \vec{l}=I_{f, S}+\mathrm{j} \omega \iint_{S} \vec{D} d \vec{s}
$$

- A rotation of magnetic field originates from current (density) and time-change in electric field (flux density)
- Without current: electric field is perpendicular to derivative of magnetic field
- Magnetic field strength is determined by current enclosed in integration path

current curls magnetic field


## Faraday's Law

$$
\nabla \times \vec{E}=-\mathrm{j} \omega \vec{B}
$$

$$
\oint_{\partial S} \vec{E} d \vec{l}=-\mathrm{j} \omega \iint_{S} \vec{B} d \vec{s}
$$

- A time changing magnetic flux causes curls in the electric field
- Together with Ampere's Law: Electric and magnetic fields cause each other $\Rightarrow$ electromagnetic waves



## Summary on Fields and Waves

- Magnetic fields have no (monopole) sources
$\Rightarrow$ Magnetic field lines must be closed.
- Curl of magnetic field is caused by current flow
- Electric field lines start at charges, or must be closed if no charges preset
- Electric and Magnetic field can cause each other
$\Rightarrow$ electromagnetic waves


### 3.3 Fields and Media

## Homogeneous Medium, Harmonic Time

|  | Differential Form | Integral Form |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Ampere's circuit law | $\nabla \times \vec{H}=\vec{J}+\mathrm{j} \omega \epsilon_{0} \epsilon_{r} \vec{E}$ | $\oint_{\partial S} \vec{H} d \vec{l}=I_{f, S}+\mathrm{j} \omega \epsilon_{0} \epsilon_{r} \iint_{S} \vec{E} d \vec{s}$ |
| Faraday's law | $\nabla \times \vec{E}=-\mathrm{j} \omega \mu_{0} \mu_{r} \vec{B}$ | $\oint_{\partial S} \vec{E} d \vec{l}=-\mathrm{j} \omega \mu_{0} \mu_{r} \iint_{S} \vec{B} d \vec{s}$ |
| Gauss' law (el.) | $\nabla \cdot \vec{D}=0$ | $\oint_{\partial V} \vec{E} d \vec{s}=0$ |
| Gauss' law (mag.) | $\nabla \cdot \vec{B}=0$ | $\oint_{\partial V} \vec{H} d \vec{s}=0$ |

- $\epsilon_{r}$ and $\mu_{r}$ virtually "increase" $\omega$ in respective formulas
$\Rightarrow$ in medium "time is running faster" (very loosely spoken)


## Boundary Conditions



Boundary conditions on dielectric/ magnetic (possibly conducting) surfaces with normal unity vector $\hat{n}$ [3]

- $\hat{n} \times\left(\vec{E}_{1}-\vec{E}_{2}\right)=0$ The tangential electric field is continuous.
- $\hat{n} \times\left(\vec{H}_{1}-\vec{H}_{2}\right)=\vec{J}_{s}$ The tangential magnetic field "jumps" by the electric surface current and is discontinuous.
- $\hat{n} \cdot\left(\vec{D}_{1}-\vec{D}_{2}\right)=\rho_{s}$ The normal dielectric flux "jumps" by the charge on the surface and is discontinuous.
- $\hat{n} \cdot\left(\vec{B}_{1}-\vec{B}_{2}\right)=0$ The normal magnetic flux is continuous


## Boundary Conditions on Conductors

conductor


Boundary conditions on conducting surfaces with normal unity vector $\hat{n}$

- Ideally conducting $\hat{n} \times \vec{E}_{1}=0$ The tangential electric field is zero.
- Finite conductivity $\vec{E}_{\tan 1}=Z_{e} \vec{J}_{s}$ The tangential electric field can be modelled with the electric surface current and a surface resistance of the material.
- Ideally conducting $\hat{n} \times \vec{H}_{1}=\vec{J}_{s}$ The tangential magnetic field is defined by the electric surface current. (induction).
- (Finite conductivity $\vec{H}_{\tan 1}=Z_{m} \vec{J}_{m}$ The tangential magnetic field can be modelled with the magnetic surface current and a surface resistance of the material.)


## Effects of Boundary Conditions

The above boundary conditions give rise to all of the well-known observations at boundary conditions such as


- Refraction: Change of direction of propagation, when the material (permittivity or permeability or both) changes
- Partial reflection (same thing)
- Total reflection, when a wave out of dense medium touches the surface to a less dense medium at a specific angle and under a specific polarization
- Reflection on conducting media (mirror)


### 3.4 The Waves and the Wave-Equation

## The Wave Equation (Derivation)

- Assume for derivation: All space is free of sources except for electrical current (and subsequently the charge)
- Curl $(\nabla \times)$ of second MWEq: $\nabla \times(\nabla \times \vec{E})=-\mathrm{j} \omega \mu \nabla \times \vec{H}$
- Put in first $\nabla \times \vec{H}=\mathrm{j} \omega \epsilon \vec{E}+\vec{J}: \nabla \times(\nabla \times \vec{E})=-\mathrm{j} \omega \mu(\mathrm{j} \omega \epsilon \vec{E}+\vec{J})$
- Reorganize and use vector identity $\nabla \times(\nabla \times V)=\nabla(\nabla \cdot V)-\nabla^{2} V$
- And another of MWEq $\nabla \cdot \vec{E}=\frac{q}{\epsilon} \Rightarrow \nabla \times(\nabla \times \vec{E})=\frac{\nabla \cdot q}{\epsilon}-\nabla^{2} \vec{E}=\frac{\nabla \cdot q}{\epsilon}-\triangle \vec{E}$

Wave-equation $\triangle \vec{E}+\omega^{2} \epsilon \mu \vec{E}=\mathrm{j} \omega \mu \vec{J}+\frac{\nabla \cdot q}{\epsilon}$
Or in only z-dimension $\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial z^{2}} \vec{E}+\omega^{2} \epsilon \mu \vec{E}=\mathrm{j} \omega \mu \vec{J}+\frac{1}{\epsilon} \frac{\partial q}{\partial z}$

## Solution of the Wave Equation

Only consider the one-dimensional wave-equation.

- "Guess" the solution to be $E_{x}=e_{x} e^{ \pm \mathrm{j} k_{z} z}$ (other vector components similar)
- Put into the wave-equation (no sources. $\vec{J}=0$ )
- $-k_{z}^{2} e_{x}+\omega^{2} \epsilon \mu e_{x}=0$ and all other components equally.
- Hence, equation fulfilled, if only $k_{z}= \pm \omega \sqrt{\epsilon \mu}$,

Dimension of it is $1 / \mathrm{m}$ (inverse length) and so is $c=\frac{1}{\sqrt{\epsilon_{0} \mu_{0}}}=299,792,458 \mathrm{~m} / \mathrm{s}$ the speed of light (in vacuum)

## Solution of the Wave Equation

- In principal this works for all field magnitudes and all derived potentials equally well with the same result.
- When all three dimensions show non-zero derivatives, there is $k^{2}=\omega^{2} \epsilon \mu=k_{x}^{2}+k_{y}^{2}+k_{z}^{2}$
- A little more interesting is the solution of Maxwell's equations under certain boundary conditions.


## The Plane Wave

- Suppose the wave is travelling in z-direction, so there is only a variation in z-direction and thus $\frac{\partial}{\partial x}=\frac{\partial}{\partial y}=0$, then $\epsilon \nabla \cdot \vec{E}=\frac{\partial E_{z}}{\partial z}=0$ and so $E_{z}=0$
$\Rightarrow$ The electric field is transversal, it has only vector components perpendicular to the propagation direction.
- Further $\nabla \times \vec{E}=-\mathrm{j} \omega \mu \vec{H}=\left(\begin{array}{c}\frac{\partial E_{y}}{\partial z} \\ -\frac{\partial E_{x}}{\partial z} \\ 0\end{array}\right)=-\mathrm{j} k\left(\begin{array}{c}E_{y} \\ -E_{x} \\ 0\end{array}\right)$ And so the magnetic field is also transversal and can be calculated directly from the components of the electric field.
- This kind of wave is called a transversal electro-magnetic or TEM wave.



## Not so Plane Wave

- $\frac{\partial}{\partial x}=\frac{\partial}{\partial y} \neq 0$,
- but in one direction $(z)$ propagation with $\propto e^{-j k_{z} z}$, then

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
E_{x}=\frac{\mathrm{j}}{\omega^{2} \epsilon \mu-k_{z}^{2}}\left(-\omega \mu \frac{\partial}{\partial y} H_{z}-k_{z} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} E_{z}\right), & E_{y}=\frac{\mathrm{j}}{\omega^{2} \epsilon \mu-k_{z}^{2}}\left(\omega \mu \frac{\partial}{\partial x} H_{z}-k_{z} \frac{\partial}{\partial y} E_{z}\right) \\
H_{x}=\frac{-\mathrm{j} k_{z}}{\omega^{2} \epsilon \mu-k_{z}^{2}}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x} H_{z}-\frac{\omega \mu}{k_{z}} \frac{\partial}{\partial y} E_{z}\right), & H_{y}=\frac{-\mathrm{j}}{\omega^{2} \epsilon \mu-k_{z}^{2}}\left(k_{z} \frac{\partial}{\partial z} H_{z}+\omega \epsilon \frac{\partial}{\partial x} E_{z}\right)
\end{array}
$$

Note: The components in direction of propagation $(z)$ are enough to define the entire field.


## What's great about this?

- Only field components in direction of propagation are enough to define total field
- We may take the liberty to split this into two sets of solution:
- Only magnetic component in $z$-direction is $H_{z} \neq 0, E_{z}=0$
$\Rightarrow$ Transverse Electric Field (TE- or H-Field)
- Only electric component in $z$-direction is $E_{z} \neq 0, H_{z}=0$
$\Rightarrow$ Transverse Magnetic Field (TM- or E-Field)

Important classification of guided waves.

## Example: TE-Wave in Parallel-Plate

Two parallel plates


Hand-drawn TEM-field (a) and TE-field (b) in parallel-plate waveguide

- E-Field tangential zero $\Rightarrow$ either only $y$-direction (a), or minimum (zero) at plates (b)
- $H$-Field perpendicular to $E \Rightarrow$ either in $x$-direction (a) or $y$ direction at $E$-max (b)
- $H$-Field lines must close, $\Rightarrow$ at infinity (in conductor) (a) or with $H_{z}$-component (max at $E$-field-min) in direction of propagation (b)


## Simulated Fields in Parallel-Plate Waveguide



Simulated field distributions for TEM-Wave ( $\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}$ ) and TE-1-Wave ( $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{d}, \mathrm{e}$ ). All other components are zero.

## Plane Wave is Special Case

- If both $H_{z}=E_{z}=0$ AND some other fields $\neq 0$, then
- $k_{z}=\omega \sqrt{\mu \epsilon}$, so denominator vanishes
- Wave has only transverse components (e.g. $E_{y}$ and $H_{x}$, or $E_{x}$ and $H_{y}$, or combination of both)
- Wave is called Transverse Electromagnetic Wave (TEM) as is the fact for plane wave.


## Wave-Impedance

Consider electrical field only in y-direction $\left(E_{y} \neq 0, E_{x}=0 \Rightarrow H_{x}=\mathrm{j} \frac{1}{\omega \mu} \frac{\partial E_{y}}{\partial z}\right.$ )

- With a z-propagating wave $E_{y}=e_{y} e^{-\mathrm{j} k z}$ do partial derivative
- $H_{x}=h_{x} e^{-\mathrm{j} k z}=-\mathrm{j} k \frac{1}{\omega \mu} \mathrm{j} e_{y} e^{-\mathrm{j} k z}$
- We already know $k=\omega \sqrt{\epsilon \mu}$
- And so $\frac{e_{y}}{h_{x}}=\sqrt{\frac{\mu}{\epsilon}}=Z$
- Wave-Impedance of free space $Z_{0}=\sqrt{\frac{\mu_{0}}{\epsilon_{0}}}=120 \pi \Omega \approx 377 \Omega$
- All equally valid for other constellations of field components


## Polarization

- Linear Polarization: $\frac{E_{x}}{E_{y}}=c c$ is a real quantity
- Two waves with linear polarization are orthogonal (practical use: law-enforcement radio (old), terrestrial satellite TV (channel separation)
- Drawback: If you happen to have a receiver (geometrically) turned to receive the other polarization, you are out of luck
- Circular polarization: Field components "turn" around the propagation vector. Field components $\frac{E_{x}}{E_{y}}= \pm \mathrm{j}$ are $\pm 90^{\circ}$ out of phase (i.e. $E_{x}=0 \rightarrow E_{y}=\max$, and vice versa) |2
- Two kinds: Right-handed $(-\mathrm{j})$ and Left-handed (j) circular polarized waves
- There is also some power in some component of the electric (or magnetic) field


## Flow of Energy

- We already know: In plane waves, where there is electric field, there is magnetic, and they are in phase!
- For many applications (antennas are one of them) in the end we are interested in the energy flow, not particularly in electric or magnetic field.
- Poynting-Vector $\vec{S}=\vec{E} \times \vec{H}^{*}$ defines the snapshot of the energy density.
- For our TEM-wave in z-direction this is $\vec{S}=\left(\begin{array}{c}E_{y} H_{z}^{*}-E_{z} H_{y}^{*} \\ E_{z} H_{x}^{*}-E_{x} H_{z}^{*} \\ E_{x} H_{y}^{*}-E_{y} H_{x}^{*}\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{c}0 \\ 0 \\ E_{x} H_{y}^{*}-E_{y} H_{x}^{*}\end{array}\right)$
- So generally energy flow is only in the direction of propagation
- Power transmitted through a surface (or even closed surface) is $P=\operatorname{Re}\left\{\frac{1}{2} \oint_{S} \vec{E} \times \vec{H}^{*}\right\}$


## References

[1] R. E. Collin. Foundations for Microwave Engineering. 2. Aufl. McGraw Hill, 1991.
[2] H. Meinke und F.W. Grundlach. Taschenbuch der Hochfrequenztechnik. 5. Aufl. Berlin: Springer, 1992.
[3] G. Oberschmidt. Waveletbasierte Simulationswerkzeuge für planare Mikrowellenschaltungen. Bd. 293. 9. Düsseldorf: VDI Fortschritt-Berichte, 1998.
[4] J. A. Stratton. Electromagnetic Theory. McGraw Hill, 1941.

## 4 Transmission Line Theory - Introduction

## Learnings

- Characterize Transmission Lines by their idealized properties (Impedance $Z$ and propagation coefficient $\gamma$ )
- Know how to deal with lossy transmission lines
- Convert Transmission line in resistor, cap, and inductor
- Understand wave propagation (incident, reflected, and transmitted)
- Understand impedance transformation (impedance transformers)
- get to know commonly used real world transmission lines


## Transmission Line Theory

Essentially, in classical electronics lines are considered as wires and do not matter. (to be more exact: of course resistance (loss) and delay do matter)
For fast signals (i.e. high frequencies) this is much different. Whenever the length of the line is within reach of the wavelength (this starts between $l>\lambda / 20$ or the latest $l>\lambda / 10$ ) the nature of transmission lines needs to be considered and that is

- Dispersion: Some frequencies are transmitted "faster" than others, thus pulses change their shape
- Travelling waves and transformation: voltages, that you see at the beginning of the line might not be, what you have at the other side
- Attenuation


## Simple Transmission Line



At each position $x$ we find the following general conditions:

- Voltages: $u(x)=u_{+}(x)+u_{-}(x)$
- Currents: $i(x)=i_{+}(x)-i_{-}(x)$
- Relation between the two: $u_{+}=Z_{0} i_{+}$and $u_{-}=Z_{0} i_{-}$

Note that the introduction of forward and backward travelling waves makes physical sense, but, in general, is somewhat arbitrary. We could have done it differently, much of this is just that: Convention! At each beginning and end of the line we have

- Beginning: $u(0)=u_{G}+Z_{G} i(0)$
- End: $u(l)=Z_{L} i(l)$

Now, there is a lot of equations and a lot to solve....

## The Line: Microscopic View



Set up the System of Differential Equations

- Voltage drop on $L^{\prime} d x$ and $R^{\prime} d x-\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} d x=i R^{\prime} d x+\frac{\partial i}{\partial t} L^{\prime} d x$
- First Deq: $\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}=-R^{\prime} i-L^{\prime} \frac{\partial i}{\partial t}$
- Drop in current analogue on $G^{\prime} d x$ and $C^{\prime} d x-\frac{\partial i}{\partial x} d x=u G^{\prime} d x+\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} C^{\prime} d x$
- Second Deq: $\frac{\partial i}{\partial x}=-G^{\prime} u-C^{\prime} \frac{\partial u}{\partial t}$
- These are the Telegrapher's Equation


## The Wave-Equation

The system of differential equations can be combined into one, which is then the Wave-Equation

- Derivative to $z$ of first equation $\frac{\partial^{2} u}{\partial x^{2}}=-R^{\prime} \frac{\partial i}{\partial x}-L^{\prime} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \frac{\partial i}{\partial t}$
- Build the derivative ( to $t$ ) of the second: $\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \frac{\partial i}{\partial x}=-G^{\prime} \frac{\partial u}{\partial t}-C^{\prime} \frac{\partial^{2} u}{\partial t^{2}}$
- And putting it all together: $\frac{\partial^{2} u}{\partial x^{2}}=R^{\prime} G^{\prime} u+\left(R^{\prime} C^{\prime}+L^{\prime} G^{\prime}\right) \frac{\partial u}{\partial t}+L^{\prime} C^{\prime} \frac{\partial^{2} u}{\partial t^{2}}$
- Much simplified for no losses $\left(R^{\prime}=G^{\prime}=0\right) \frac{\partial^{2} u}{\partial x^{2}}=L^{\prime} C^{\prime} \frac{\partial^{2} u}{\partial t^{2}}$
- This is the Wave-Equation


## Numerical Solution of the DeqS: Like FDTD I



Time-step $m$ and $m-1 / 2$ to $m+1 / 2$
Time-step $m$ and $m+1 / 2$ to $m+1$
(boxed) values are calculated, others
given from previous steps

Discretrization of System of differential equations in $x_{n}, N$ grid-steps and $t_{m}, M$ time-steps

- For simplification omit losses: $\frac{\partial i}{\partial t}=-\frac{1}{L^{\prime}} \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial t}=-\frac{1}{C^{\prime}} \frac{\partial i}{\partial x}$
- Finite differences (step one): $\frac{i\left(n+\frac{1}{2}, m+\frac{1}{2}\right)-i\left(n+\frac{1}{2}, m-\frac{1}{2}\right)}{\Delta t}=-\frac{1}{L^{\prime}} \frac{u\left(n+\frac{1}{2}, m\right)-u\left(n-\frac{1}{2}, m\right)}{\Delta x} i\left(n+\frac{1}{2}, m+\frac{1}{2}\right)=$ $i\left(n+\frac{1}{2}, m-\frac{1}{2}\right)-\frac{\Delta t}{L^{\prime} \Delta x}\left(u\left(n+\frac{1}{2}, m\right)-u\left(n-\frac{1}{2}, m\right)\right)$


## Numerical Solution of the DeqS: Like FDTD II



Time-step $m$ and $m-1 / 2$ to $m+1 / 2$
Time-step $m$ and $m+1 / 2$ to $m+1$
(boxed) values are calculated, others
given from previous steps

- Finite differences (step two): $\frac{u\left(n+\frac{1}{2}, m+1\right)-u\left(n+\frac{1}{2}, m\right)}{\Delta t}=-\frac{1}{C^{\prime}} \frac{i\left(n+\frac{1}{2}, m+\frac{1}{2}\right)-i\left(n-\frac{1}{2}, m+\frac{1}{2}\right)}{\Delta x} u\left(n+\frac{1}{2}, m+1\right)=$ $u\left(n+\frac{1}{2}, m\right)-\frac{\Delta t}{C^{\prime} \Delta x}\left(i\left(n+\frac{1}{2}, m+\frac{1}{2}\right)-i\left(n-\frac{1}{2}, m+\frac{1}{2}\right)\right)$
- This is now one time-step forward. Scheme is like (not equal to) the Finite Differences Time Domain scheme (Yee).


## Remarks on FDTD

- Conceptially VERY simple (even if you like to smile now)
- No Matrix solution involved
- Entire space (rigorously this means all space) must be discretized
$\Rightarrow$ Quite memory and time consuming
- Stability issues, therefore ( $v_{\max }$ is maximum phase velocity) $v_{\max } \Delta t \leq \sqrt{\Delta x^{2}+\Delta y^{2}+\Delta z^{2}}{ }^{-1}$
$\Rightarrow$ Small grid requires small time-steps (time and memory)
- Frequency response must be extracted
- With smart excitation (chirp-pulse) entire frequency range can be calculated in one shot
- Perfectly (matched) boundary conditions required to simulate free space
- Limited by the grid, all configurations (material-steps etc.) can be simulated, no restrictions.


## The Line: Microscopic View



- Distributed elements: $L^{\prime}, C^{\prime}, R^{\prime}, G^{\prime}$; ideally (lossless) $R^{\prime}=G^{\prime}=0$
- Solution of DGL yields (lossy case)

$$
u(x)=U_{+} e^{-\gamma x}+U_{-} e^{+\gamma x} ; i(x)=I_{+} e^{-\gamma x}-I_{-} e^{+\gamma x}
$$

with propagation coefficient $\gamma=\alpha+\mathrm{j} \beta=\sqrt{\left(R^{\prime}+\mathrm{j} \omega L^{\prime}\right)\left(G^{\prime}+\mathrm{j} \omega C^{\prime}\right)} \approx \mathrm{j} \omega \sqrt{L^{\prime} C^{\prime}}$

- Subsequently for characteristic impedance

$$
Z_{0}=\sqrt{\frac{R^{\prime}+\mathrm{j} \omega L^{\prime}}{G^{\prime}+\mathrm{j} \omega C^{\prime}}} \approx \sqrt{\frac{L^{\prime}}{C^{\prime}}}
$$

## Reflection

For ease of use we introduce the reflection coefficient

$$
\Gamma_{L}=\frac{u_{-}(l)}{u_{+}(l)}=\frac{Z_{L}-Z_{0}}{Z_{L}+Z_{0}}
$$

from system of equations above. This is valid for the voltages and the currents, you might see slightly different reflection coefficients elsewhere in some literature.
Reflection leads to standing waves on the transmission lines:


Brief animation!

## Definition of VSWR



- VSWR stands for voltage standing wave ratio and means the ratio of the min and max voltage of the standing wave
- Definition

$$
V S W R=\frac{u_{\max }}{u_{\min }}=\frac{1+|\Gamma|}{1-|\Gamma|}
$$

- Range: 1 for perfect match, $\infty$ for short or open


## Load Transformation

Impedance on transmission-lines at a distance $l$ from the load is (lossless case) described by:

$$
Z_{i n}=Z_{c} \frac{Z_{L}+j Z_{c} \tan \beta l}{Z_{c}+j Z_{L} \tan \beta l}
$$

Special cases

|  | $l=\lambda / 2$ | $l=\lambda / 4$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\tan \beta l$ | 0 | $\infty$ |
| $Z_{i n}$ | $Z_{i n}=Z_{L}$ | $Z_{i n}=Z_{c}^{2} / Z_{L}$ |
| $Z_{L}=0$ (short) | $Z_{i n}=0$ | $Z_{\text {in }}=\infty$ (open) |
| $Z_{L}=\infty$ (open) | $Z_{\text {in }}=\infty$ | $Z_{\text {in }}=0$ (short) |
|  | $Z_{\text {in }}$ at Open | $Z_{\text {in }}$ at Short |
|  | $-j \frac{Z_{c}}{\tan \beta l}$ | $j Z_{c} \tan \beta l$ |

Hence, a quarter-wavelength line can be used as a transformer, for impedance matching, and especially in bias networks for active elements (to be seen later).

## Two-Port Parameters of Lines I



Transmission line and T- and $\Pi$-equivalent circuit

- A transmission line is (abstractly) nothing else than a symmetrical two-port
- All symmetrical two-ports can be expressed as T - or $\Pi$-equivalent circuits. Possibly (or rather certainly) the elements are strongly frequency dependent!


## Two-Port Parameters of Lines II

- The П-ckt has equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
U_{2} & =U_{1}\left(1+\frac{1}{2} Z_{\pi} Y_{\pi}\right)+Z_{\pi} I_{1} \\
I_{2} & =I_{1}\left(1+\frac{1}{2} Z_{\pi} Y_{\pi}\right)+U_{1} Y_{\pi}\left(1+\frac{1}{4} Z_{\pi} Y_{\pi}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

- At the same time the line-equations in mathematical form are

$$
\begin{aligned}
U_{2} & =U_{1} \cosh \gamma l+Z_{0} I_{1} \sinh \gamma l \\
I_{2} & =I_{1} \cosh \gamma l+\frac{U_{1}}{Z_{0}} \sinh \gamma l
\end{aligned}
$$

- Finally we find (summarized for both eq.ckt.)

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
Z_{\pi}=Z_{0} \sinh \gamma l & Y_{\pi}=\frac{2}{Z_{0}} \tanh \frac{\gamma l}{2} \\
Y_{T}=\frac{1}{Z_{0}} \sinh \gamma l & T_{T}=2 Z_{0} \tanh \frac{\gamma l}{2}
\end{array}
$$

## Electrically Short Transmission Lines

The above derived equivalent circuits are especially interesting for short transmission lines (i.e. $\gamma l \ll \lambda$ ) In that case the hyperbolic functions are approximated as $\sinh \gamma l \approx \gamma l, \quad \cosh \gamma l \approx 1, \quad \tanh \frac{\gamma l}{2} \approx \frac{\gamma l}{2}$ And so we obtain $Z_{\pi} \approx Z_{0} \gamma l \approx j \omega \sqrt{\epsilon_{r} \epsilon_{0} \mu_{0}} Z_{0} l$ which looks very much like an inductance, and $Y_{\pi} \approx$ $\gamma l / Z_{0} \approx j \omega \sqrt{\epsilon_{r} \epsilon_{0} \mu_{0}} / Z_{0} l$ which looks like a capacitance.

Which is dominant is mostly dependent on $Z_{0}$. For large $Z_{0}$ there is a dominant series inductance with small (parasitic) shunt capacitance. For a small $Z_{0}$ we see capacitive behavior with parasitic inductance.

Similar here are the parameters of the T-equivalent circuit: $Y_{T} \approx 1 / Z_{0} \sinh \gamma l \approx j \omega \sqrt{\epsilon_{r} \epsilon_{0} \mu_{0}} Z_{0}$, again, this is a capacitance and also $Z_{T} \approx Z_{0} \gamma l \approx j \omega \sqrt{\epsilon_{r} \epsilon_{0} \mu_{0}} / Z_{0}$. The latter is now the missing (evtl. parasitic) inductance.

These figures are much used in design of low-pass filters as we will see later.

### 4.1 Stubs

## Use of Stubs: Shorted Stub




In micro-strip

- Short transformed to "throughpassing" line whenever $l=n \frac{\lambda_{\text {eff }}}{2}+\frac{\lambda_{\text {eff }}}{4}$ with $n=0,1,2, \ldots$
- This effectively "opens" the line
- Represents band stop for those frequencies fulfilling $l=n \frac{\lambda_{\text {eff }}}{2}$


## Use of Stubs: Open Stub



- Open transformed to "throughpassing" line whenever $l=n \frac{\lambda_{\text {eff }}}{2}$ with $n=0,1,2, \ldots$
- This effectively - again - "opens" the line
- Represents band stop for those frequencies fulfilling $l=n \frac{\lambda_{e f f}}{2}+\frac{\lambda_{\text {eff }}}{4}$.


## Stubs: Frequency Response



Frequency response of parallel shorted (red) and open (blue) stubs.
Please note the sharp bandstop character of the mentioned circuits.

### 4.2 Smith Diagram

## Smith Diagram

What is it?

1. Plot the complex reflection coefficient (real-part $=x$-axis, imaginary-part $=y$-axis)
2. Draw lines of special cases of terminations; exploit the equation $\Gamma=\frac{Z / Z_{0}-1}{Z / Z_{0}+1}$
3. These special cases lead to circles in the reflection-coefficient plane (e.g. all terminations with $\operatorname{Re}\left\{Z / Z_{0}\right\}=0 ; 1 ; \ldots$ describe a circle). The same for the imaginary part! These are the streets you travel on, when you add cap, ind or res to the load!
4. Use it: When the reflection factor has been plotted, by checking the neighboring lines for different loads you can estimate the impedance that has lead to this reflection without a calculator!
5. When modifying the load, you can immediately estimate on what curve in the reflection coefficient will change (curve of constant resistor, changed inductor values etc.)

Smith Diagram

$\qquad$

Original Smith I


## Original Smith II

Lower part of smith diagram (transfer distance from origin to here)

## Lumped Elements in Smith Diagram



Trajectories in Smith-diagram for adjusting/ changing value of lumped elements in simple circuit configurations

## 5 Practical Transmission Lines

## Zoo of Lines



### 5.1 Non-Planar Waveguides

## Simple Line: Two Parallel Plates

Parallel-Plate Waveguide


Two infinitely extended (in $x, z$ directions) perfectly electric conducting plates.
What does the field look like?


- Set plates to different potential
- Possible, because plates are isolated


## PPWG: Simplest Field Solution TEM



- Homogeneous electric field
- Homogeneous magnetic field (not shown)
- No component in direction of propagation: TEM


Field distribution for Parallel Plate Waveguide TEM-Wave

## PPWG: TEM Field

The solution is

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E_{y}=-\frac{U}{d} \times e^{-\mathrm{j} k z} \\
& H_{x}=\frac{U}{d} \times \sqrt{\frac{\epsilon}{\mu}} \times e^{-\mathrm{j} k z}
\end{aligned}
$$

with

$$
k=\omega \sqrt{\epsilon \mu}
$$

$$
Z_{c}=\frac{E_{y}}{H_{x}}=\sqrt{\frac{\epsilon}{\mu}}
$$

Propagation coefficient $k$ and wave-impedance $\eta$ only dependent on material not on geometry $d$.

## Are there Other Solutions?

Further solutions under given boundaries: Crossing Waves


Two plane waves crossing $E_{1}=E_{0} e^{\mathrm{j}\left(k_{x} x+k_{z} z\right)}, E_{2}=E_{0} e^{\mathrm{j}\left(-k_{x} x+k_{z} z\right)}$ yield interference pattern. Green-lines: Extremes adding up Yellow-lines: Canceling to zero

## PPWG: Other Solutions



- At canceling regions (yellow) perfectly electric conductors can be placed
- Field is not disturbed (but can practically not being excited anymore)
- Region between conducting planes is Parallel Plate Waveguide!


## Mathematics of Parallel Plate Modes

- Fields have vector components $\perp$ to $\vec{k}$, thus

$$
\vec{E}_{1}=\left(\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
E_{y} \\
E_{z}
\end{array}\right)=E_{0}\left(\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
\cos \theta \\
\sin \theta
\end{array}\right), \quad \quad \vec{E}_{2}=\left(\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
E_{y} \\
E_{z}
\end{array}\right)=E_{0}\left(\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
\cos \theta \\
-\sin \theta
\end{array}\right),
$$

- Angle for propagation is $\sin \theta=k_{y} /|k|, \cos \theta=k_{z} /|k|=\sqrt{|k|^{2}-k_{y}^{2}} /|k|^{2}$
- Total field is thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(\vec{E}_{1} \times e^{\mathrm{j} k_{y} y}-\vec{E}_{2} \times e^{-j k_{y} y}\right) \times e^{\mathrm{j} k_{z} z}= \\
& 2 E_{0}\left(\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
\mathrm{j} \cos \theta \sin \left(k_{y} y\right) \\
\sin \theta \cos \left(k_{y} y\right)
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

## Observations to PPWG \& Crossed Fields

- There is a periodicity in $y$ direction with zero-lines
- Period must be $2 \times d$ (Half-period $=d)$
$\Rightarrow k_{y} d=\pi \Leftrightarrow k_{y}=\frac{\pi}{d}$
- With

$$
\begin{aligned}
k & =\frac{2 \pi}{\lambda}=\sqrt{k_{z}^{2}+k_{y}^{2}} \\
\Leftrightarrow k_{z} & =\sqrt{k^{2}-k_{y}^{2}}=\sqrt{\left(\frac{2 \pi}{\lambda}\right)^{2}-\left(\frac{\pi}{d}\right)^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

If $\lambda$ is large (low frequency) $k_{y}$ eats all of $k$ up and there is nothing remaining for $k_{z}$ propagation.

- There must be a maximum "allowed" $\lambda$.
- This is called cutoff-wavelength $\lambda_{c}=2 d$


## Crossed Field Simulation



Crossed Fields with angle optimizes, so that $d=0.1 \mathrm{~m}$ is OK

- Note, that wavelengths in $z$-direction changes drastically.
- At Cut-off (wavelength or frequency) $k_{z} \rightarrow 0$ and wavelength in waveguide $\lambda_{g} \rightarrow \infty$
- $\lambda_{g}=\frac{\lambda_{0}}{\sqrt{1-\left(\lambda_{0} / \lambda_{c}\right)^{2}}}$


## Parallel Plates: Higher Modes



- Virtual PEC-planes can be placed, so that multiple ( $n$ ) max and zeros are in-between
$\Rightarrow$

$$
\begin{aligned}
k_{y} d & =n \pi \Leftrightarrow k_{y}=\frac{n \pi}{d} \\
k_{z} & =\sqrt{\left(\frac{2 \pi}{\lambda}\right)^{2}-\left(\frac{n \pi}{d}\right)^{2}} \\
\lambda_{c} & =2 \frac{d}{n}
\end{aligned}
$$

## PPWG: Higher Modes


(a) $E_{x} T E_{1} 1.4 \mathrm{GHz}$

(e) $E_{y} T E M 1.4 \mathrm{GHz}$

(b) $E_{x} T E_{1} 1.5 \mathrm{GHz}$
(f) $E_{y} T M_{1} 1.4 \mathrm{GHz}$


(c) $E_{x} T E_{2} 3.0 \mathrm{GHz}$

(d) $E_{x} T E_{3} 4.5 \mathrm{GHz}$

(g) $E_{y} T M_{2} 1.5 \mathrm{GHz}$

(h) $E_{y} T M_{2} 3.0 \mathrm{GHz}$

Modes in Parallel-Plate Waveguide, TE (upper), TEM and TM (lower). Note different $z$-scaling in (e,f). $d=1 \mathrm{~m} .(\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{f})$ below cutoff.

## Propagation Coefficients


$d=0.1 \mathrm{~m}$ Waveguide with (increasing) propagation coefficients $k_{z}$ of increasing order ( $0,1,2,3,4,5,6$ ). Attenuation coefficient (below cutoff) denoted by diamond.

## Propagation Coefficient: Interpretation



Interpretation:

- $\operatorname{Re}\left\{k_{z}\right\}=2 \pi / \lambda_{g}$ or wavelength $\lambda_{g}=2 \pi / \operatorname{Re}\left\{k_{z}\right\}$, the larger $\operatorname{Re}\left\{k_{z}\right\}$, the shorter the (guided) wave
- Above cut-off phase in radians per meter, or phase velocity $v_{p}=2 \pi f / \operatorname{Re}\left\{k_{z}\right\}$
- Below cut-off amplitude decay $\propto e^{-\operatorname{lm}\left\{k_{z}\right\} z}$ (How many $e$ per meter) The larger $\operatorname{Im}\left\{k_{z}\right\}$ the faster the decay of the wave.


## Rectangular Waveguide



Waveguide for M-Band with flanges.

- Essentially two Parallel Plate Waveguides in $x$ and $y$-direction
- Absolutely same argument as above apply


## Diff. Eq. Rectangular Waveguide

- For Transverse Electrical Modes (TE):

$$
\begin{array}{rlrl}
\left(\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x^{2}}+\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial y^{2}}+k_{c}^{2}\right) h_{z}(x, y) & =0 & & \\
\text { with } h_{z}(x, y) & =X(x) Y(y) & & \\
\frac{\partial^{2} X}{\partial x^{2}}+k_{x}^{2} X & =0 & \frac{\partial^{2} Y}{\partial y^{2}}+k_{y}^{2} Y & =0 \\
k_{x}^{2}+k_{y}^{2} & =k_{c}^{2}, & k_{c}^{2}+k_{z}^{2}=k^{2}=\omega^{2} \epsilon \mu
\end{array}
$$

- For Transverse Magnetic Modes (TM):

$$
\left(\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x^{2}}+\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial y^{2}}+k_{c}^{2}\right) e_{z}(x, y)=0
$$

## Rectangular Waveguide: Solution

- Solution must be such, that tangential electric field at waveguide walls is zero $\Rightarrow$ field must have sin-form
- Since two walls: Two different orders ( $\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{m}$ ) are present (together with field-forms TE and TM)
- Cut-off frequency

$$
f_{c, m, n}=\frac{1}{2 \pi \sqrt{\epsilon \mu}} \sqrt{\left(\frac{m \pi}{a}\right)^{2}+\left(\frac{n \pi}{b}\right)^{2}}
$$

## Example: Ideal Propagation in Waveguide



Propagation coefficient for first order modes in WR-90 Waveguide (X-Band). Note: $a / b \neq 2$

Field in R-WG: $T E_{10}$


Modes in Rectangular Waveguide, different cuts $T E_{10}$ E-Field (upper), H-Field (lower)

Field in R-WG: $T E_{01}$


Modes in Rectangular Waveguide, different cuts

$$
T E_{01} \text { E-Field (upper), H-Field (lower) }
$$

Field in R-WG: $T E_{11}$


Modes in Rectangular Waveguide, different cuts
$T E_{11}$ E-Field (upper), H-Field (lower)

Field in R-WG: $T M_{11}$


Modes in Rectangular Waveguide, different cuts

$$
T M_{11} \text { E-Field (upper), H-Field (lower) }
$$

Field in R-WG: $T E_{20}$


Modes in Rectangular Waveguide, different cuts
$T E_{20}$ E-Field (upper), H-Field (lower)

Field in R-WG: $T E_{21}$


Modes in Rectangular Waveguide, different cuts

$$
T E_{21} \text { E-Field (upper), H-Field (lower) }
$$

Field in R-WG: $T M_{21}$


Modes in Rectangular Waveguide, different cuts
$T M_{21}$ E-Field (upper), H-Field (lower)

Field in R-WG: $T E_{02}$


Modes in Rectangular Waveguide, different cuts

$$
T E_{02} \text { E-Field (upper), H-Field (lower) }
$$

Field in R-WG: $T E_{12}$


Modes in Rectangular Waveguide, different cuts
$T E_{12}$ E-Field (upper), H-Field (lower)

Field in R-WG: $T M_{12}$


Modes in Rectangular Waveguide, different cuts

$$
T M_{12} \text { E-Field (upper), H-Field (lower) }
$$

Field in R-WG: $T E_{22}$


Modes in Rectangular Waveguide, different cuts
$T E_{22}$ E-Field (upper), H-Field (lower)

Field in R-WG: $T M_{22}$


Modes in Rectangular Waveguide, different cuts

$$
T M_{22} \text { E-Field (upper), H-Field (lower) }
$$

Rectangular Waveguides $T E_{10}$ Summary
Rectangular Waveguide


Cutoff-Frequency (fundamental mode) $f_{c}=\frac{1}{2 \sqrt{\epsilon_{0} \mu_{0}} a}, \lambda_{c}=2 a$
Field-Impedance $Z_{c}=Z_{0} / \sqrt{1-\left(\lambda_{0} / \lambda_{c}\right)^{2}}$
Effective Wavelength in the guide $\lambda_{e f f}=\lambda_{0} / \sqrt{1-\left(\lambda_{0} / \lambda_{c}\right)^{2}}$
The characteristic impedance is not uniquely defined because of transversal field components Modes

(a) (b) (c)

TE01 Mode with (a) $E_{y}$ (b) $H_{z}$ (c) $H_{x}$

## Rectangular Waveguides II



Waveguide for M-Band with flanges.

## Rectangular Waveguides III

| Frequency/GHz | Band | DIN 47302 | IEC 153 EIA | Width $a / \mathrm{mm}$ | Width $a /$ Inch | $a / b$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| $1.12 \ldots 1.7$ | L | R 14 | WR 650 | 165.10 | 6.500 | 2.00 |
| $1.7 \ldots 2.6$ | LA | R 22 | WR 430 | 109.22 | 4.300 | 2.00 |
| $2.2 \ldots 3.3$ | LS | R 26 | WR 340 | 86.36 | 3.400 | 2.00 |
| $2.6 \ldots 3.95$ | S | R 32 | WR 284 | 72.14 | 2.840 | 2.12 |
| $3.22 \ldots 4.90$ | A | R 40 | WR 229 | 58.17 | 2.290 | 2.00 |
| $3.95 \ldots 5.85$ | G | R 48 | WR 187 | 47.55 | 1.872 | 2.15 |
| $4.64 \ldots 7.05$ | C | R 58 | WR 159 | 40.39 | 1.590 | 2.00 |
| $5.85 \ldots 8.2$ | J | R 70 | WR 137 | 34.85 | 1.372 | 2.21 |
| $7.05 \ldots 10.0$ | H | R 84 | WR 112 | 28.50 | 1.122 | 2.00 |
| $8.2 \ldots 12.4$ | X | R 100 | WR 90 | 22.86 | 0.900 | 2.25 |
| $10.0 \ldots 15.0$ | M | R 120 | WR 75 | 19.05 | 0.750 | 2.00 |
| $12.4 \ldots 18.0$ | P | R 140 | WR 62 | 15.80 | 0.622 | 2.00 |
| $15.0 \ldots 22.0$ | N | R 180 | WR 51 | 12.95 | 0.510 | 2.00 |
| $18.0 \ldots 26.5$ | K | R 220 | WR 42 | 10.67 | 0.420 | 2.47 |
| $21.7 \ldots 23.0$ | R | 260 | WR 34 | 8.64 | 0.340 | 2.00 |
| $25.5 \ldots 40.0$ | R | R 320 | WR 28 | 7.11 | 0.280 | 2.00 |
| $33.0 \ldots 50.0$ | Q |  | WR 22 | 5.69 | 0.224 | 2.00 |
| $40.0 \ldots 60.0$ | U |  | WR 19 | 4.78 | 0.188 | 2.00 |
| $50.0 \ldots 75.0$ | V |  | WR 15 | 0.148 | 2.00 |  |
| $75.0 \ldots 110$ | W |  | WR 10 | 0.100 | 2.00 |  |

## Insert: Velocities

- How fast is the wave (zero or maximum)? $\Rightarrow$ Phase velocity $v_{p}$
- How fast is a group of waves? $\Rightarrow$ Group velocity $v_{g}$ (comes close to speed of the signal)
- How fast is really the signal?


## Phase-Velocity



- During on period of length $T$ one entire wave of length $\lambda$ (wavelength in medium or guide) has passed the point of observation

$$
\Rightarrow v_{p}=\frac{\lambda}{T}=\frac{2 \pi}{2 \pi} \times \frac{\frac{1}{T}}{\frac{1}{\lambda}}=\frac{\omega}{k_{z}}
$$

## Phase-Velocity II

- Generally $y=\sin \left(\omega_{1} t-k_{z} z\right)$ phase stationary if observer moves with $v_{p}=\omega / k_{z}$
- In Rectangular waveguide

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_{p} & =\frac{\omega}{\sqrt{\omega^{2} \epsilon \mu-\left(\frac{m \pi}{a}\right)^{2}-\left(\frac{n \pi}{b}\right)^{2}}} \\
& =\frac{1}{\sqrt{\epsilon \mu-\left(\frac{m \pi}{\omega a}\right)^{2}-\left(\frac{n \pi}{\omega b}\right)^{2}}} \\
& =\frac{c}{\sqrt{1-\left(\frac{k_{c}}{k_{0}}\right)^{2}}}
\end{aligned}
$$

$\omega \rightarrow \infty \Rightarrow v_{p} \rightarrow c$
$\omega \rightarrow \omega_{c} \Rightarrow v_{p} \rightarrow \infty$

## Group-Velocity

- Start wave-packet with

$$
\begin{aligned}
y & =\sin \left(\omega_{1} t-k_{z 1} z\right)+\sin \left(\omega_{2} t-k_{z 2} z\right) \\
& =2 \cos \left(\frac{\left(\omega_{1}+\omega_{2}\right) t-\left(k_{z 1}+k_{z 2}\right) z}{2}\right) \cos \left(\frac{\left(\omega_{2}-\omega_{1}\right) t-\left(k_{z 2}\right.}{2}\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

- Again, packet stationary if observer moves with

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_{g} & =\frac{\omega_{2}-\omega_{1}}{k_{z 2}-k_{z 1}} \\
\lim _{\omega_{2} \rightarrow \omega 1} v_{g} & =\frac{d \omega}{d k_{z}}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Group-Velocity II

- Rectangular waveguide

$$
\begin{aligned}
\omega & =\sqrt{\frac{k_{z}^{2}-\left(\frac{m \pi}{\omega a}\right)^{2}-\left(\frac{n \pi}{\omega b}\right)^{2}}{\epsilon \mu}} \\
v_{g}=\frac{d \omega}{d k_{z}} & =\frac{k_{z}}{\sqrt{k_{z}^{2}-\left(\frac{m \pi}{\omega a}\right)^{2}-\left(\frac{n \pi}{\omega b}\right)^{2}}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\epsilon \mu}} \\
& =c \sqrt{1-\left(\frac{m \pi}{\omega a}\right)^{2} \frac{1}{\epsilon \mu}-\left(\frac{n \pi}{\omega b}\right)^{2} \frac{1}{\epsilon \mu}} \\
& =c \sqrt{1-\left(\frac{k_{c}}{k_{0}}\right)^{2}}=\frac{c^{2}}{v_{p}}
\end{aligned}
$$

$\omega \rightarrow \infty \Rightarrow v_{g} \rightarrow c$
$\omega \rightarrow \omega_{c} \Rightarrow v_{g} \rightarrow 0$

## Velocities



Phase (blue) and group (red) velocity for one mode in rectangular or parallel plate waveguide.

## How to Interpret Velocities?

- If $f \rightarrow \infty$ "ray" of microwaves "shoots" right through the waveguide (like laser-light). Speed approaches $c$
- If $f=f_{c}$ wave in guide is $\infty$-long, phase travels $\infty$ fast
- If $f=f_{c}$ wave bounces left and right between walls, all $k$ is eaten up by $k_{x}$, no propagation in $z$-direction, signal $\infty$ slow.


## R-WG Iris in E-PLane



Iris (of zero thickness) in E-Plane $=$ (frequency dependent) shunt cap [2, pp. 217].

## R-WG Step in E-Plane



Step in height $(\mathrm{E}-\mathrm{PL}$ ane $)=($ frequency dependent $)$ shunt cap [2, pp. 217] with impedance step.

## R-WG Iris in H-PLane



Iris $($ of zero thickness $)$ in H -Plane $=($ frequency dependent $)$ shunt inductor [2, pp. 217].

## R-WG Step in H-Plane


(a)
(b)

Step in width (H-PLane) $=($ frequency dependent $)$ shunt inductor [2, pp. 217] with impedance step.

## Circular Waveguide



Use water pipe as waveguide

- Basically the same mechanism as for rectangular waveguide
- Different mathematics (cylindrical coordinates) [4]
- Again, TE and TM-modes with radial and angular order


## Diff Eq. for Circular Waveguide

- General wave-equation in cylindrical coordinates (4]

$$
\left(\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial \rho^{2}}+\frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho}+\frac{1}{\rho^{2}} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial \phi^{2}}+k_{c}^{2}\right)\left\{\binom{h_{z}(\rho, \phi)}{e_{z}(\rho, \phi)}\right\}=0
$$

- Separation of variables e.g. $e_{z}=R(\rho) \Phi(\phi)$
- Solution

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\{\binom{h_{z}(\rho, \phi)}{e_{z}(\rho, \phi)}\right\} & \}=(A \sin (n \phi)+B \cos (n \phi))\left(C J_{n}\left(k_{c} \rho\right)+D Y_{n}\left(k_{c} \rho\right)\right) \\
& \rightarrow B^{\prime} \cos (n \phi) J_{n}\left(k_{c} \rho\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

polarization selected through cos and $Y_{n}$ (Bessel function of second kind) impossible because of singularity at 0 .

## First Modes in CWG

- Analysis of solution of characteristic equations

$$
J_{n} k_{c} a=0 \quad J_{n}^{\prime}\left(k_{c} a\right)=0
$$

shows:

- lowest order modes are

| Nr. | Mode | $\left\{k_{c} a\right\}_{n m}$ | Nr. | Mode | $\left\{k_{c} a\right\}_{n m}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | $T E_{11}$ | 1.8412 | 3 | $T E_{21}$ | 3.0542 |
| 2 | $T M_{01}$ | 2.4048 | 4 | $T E_{01}=T M_{11}$ | 3.8317 |

Field in C-WG: $T E_{11} \& T M_{01}$


Modes in Circular Waveguide, transverse cut $T E_{11}$ (left) and $T M_{01}$ (right)

Field in C-WG: $T E_{21} \& T E_{01}$


Modes in Circular Waveguide, transverse cut $T E_{21}$ (left) and $T E_{01}$ (right)

Field in C-WG: $T M_{11} \& T E_{45}$


Modes in Circular Waveguide, transverse cut $T M_{11}$ (left) and $T E_{45}$ (right) as example for really high order mode

## Everyday Application of Circular Waveguide



LNA Satellite-TV front end with circular waveguide and field-probes for both orthogonal polarizations

## Coaxial Waveguide



- Supports TEM wave, because of two isolated conductors
- If frequency gets higher, supports $T E$ and $T M$ modes, similar to the circular waveguide


## Coax: TEM-Mode



- Solution for potential of Laplace's Equation $\Delta U=0$
- Propagation independent of geometry, Wave impedance as given

$$
\begin{array}{rlr}
\epsilon_{e f f} & =\epsilon_{r}, & k_{z}=k \\
Z_{c} & =Z_{0} \ln (b / a) /\left(2 \pi \sqrt{\epsilon_{r}}\right) &
\end{array}
$$

free space impedance

$$
Z_{0}=\sqrt{\frac{L^{\prime}}{C^{\prime}}}=\sqrt{\frac{\mu_{0}}{\epsilon_{0}}}=120 \pi \Omega
$$

## Higher order Mode in Coax-Line

- Undesired: Higher order mode propagating in Coax.
- Differential Equation same as for circular waveguide
- Already know: $T E_{11}$ should be first mode to propagate
- Cut-off of this mode can be approximated as [3]

$$
k_{c}=\frac{2 \pi}{\lambda_{c}}=\frac{2 \pi f_{c}}{\sqrt{\epsilon \mu}} \approx \frac{2}{a+b}
$$

## Coax-Line: Fields



Modes in Coaxial Waveguide $(50 \Omega)$ at 5 GHz with $a=220 \mathrm{~mm}, b=500 \mathrm{~mm} T E M$ (left) and $T E_{11}$ (right)

## Excitation of Higher Order Mode



Normalized cutoff-wavelength for $T E_{11}$ mode for normalized radii

## Excitation of Higher Order Mode



## Examples

- RG-58 cable (inner radius $0.4 \mathrm{~mm}, \epsilon_{r} \approx 2.2$ ) $\rightarrow b / a \approx 3.4$
$\Rightarrow \lambda_{c} / a=20 \Rightarrow \lambda_{c} \approx 8 \mathrm{~mm} \Rightarrow f_{c} \approx 37.5 \mathrm{GHz}$
- Ecoflex-10-Cable with inner diameter $d_{i}=2.85 \mathrm{~mm}$ and $\epsilon_{r}=1.35 \Rightarrow f_{c} \approx 16 \mathrm{GHz}$

Coaxial Connectors

| Connector summary Connector type | Frequency range | Mates with | Avoid mating with | torq. Ncm |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 7 mm APC7 <br> $N$ <br> SMA <br> 3.5 mm (APC 3.5) <br> 2.92 mm or " $K$ " <br> 2.4 mm <br> 1.85 mm <br> 1 mm | $\begin{aligned} & 18 \mathrm{GHz} \\ & 18 \mathrm{GHz} \\ & \text { variable, } 18 \text { to } 24 \mathrm{GHz} \\ & 34 \mathrm{GHz} \\ & \text { To } 40 \mathrm{GHz} \\ & \geq 50 \mathrm{GHz} \\ & 65 \text { to } 70 \mathrm{GHz} \\ & 110 \mathrm{GHz} \end{aligned}$ | 3.5, 2.92 mm <br> SMA, 2.92 mm <br> SMA, 3.5 mm <br> 1.85 mm only <br> 2.4 mm only | $\begin{aligned} & 2.4 \mathrm{~mm} \\ & 2.4 \mathrm{~mm} \\ & 2.4 \mathrm{~mm} \\ & \text { SMA, } 2.92,3.5 \mathrm{~mm} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 136 \text { (Finger) } \\ & 136 \text { (Finger) } \\ & 56 \\ & 90 \\ & 90 \end{aligned}$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & M M(B, C, P) X \\ & S M B(F A K R A) \\ & M C X \\ & B N C \\ & U . F L \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 12.4,6,65 \mathrm{GHz} \\ & 4 \mathrm{GHz} \\ & 6 \mathrm{GHz} \\ & 4 \mathrm{GHz} \\ & 6 \mathrm{GHz} \end{aligned}$ | UMCC, IPX, MHF etc. |  | Snap on <br> Snap on <br> Snap on <br> Bajonett <br> Snap on |

### 5.2 Planar Waveguides on PCB

## Coplanar Waveguide

Coplanar Line (grounded and non-grounded)


- Coupled slot-line: Odd (fundamental) mode is of interest
- All on one plane, easy connect for semiconductors
- Short-circuit easy to realize, no via required


## Micro-Strip-Line

Geometry


Impedance and effective permittivity

(a)

(b)
(Collin p. 158 [1], $\epsilon_{r}=2.26$ )

Micro-Strip: Current Distribution

(Collin p. 164 [1], broken-line: quasi static current distribution, Alumina substrate $\mathrm{H}=1 \mathrm{~mm}$ )

## Micro-Strip Line: Some Remarks

- Relatively easy to handle in PCB
- OPEN is OK, but not perfect (to be seen later)
- SHORT only manufacture-able with via (not ideal, either)
- BENDS/ CURVES should be mitered
- (Quasi-static) Effective design formulas exist, also for buried or multi-layered micro-strip lines
- Watch out for
- Disturbances in Ground plane
- Coupling to other lines
- Disturbances (e.g. shielding cages) in vicinity of the line!
- substrate may be an-isotropic, i.e. $\epsilon_{r}$ differs with direction.


## Calculation of Effective Properties of MS

Effective dielectric constant:
with

$$
F\left(\epsilon_{r}, H\right)= \begin{cases}0.02\left(\epsilon_{r}-1\right)(1-W / H)^{2}, & \text { for } W / H<1 \\ 0 & \text { for } W / H>1\end{cases}
$$

Die characteristic impedance is

$$
Z_{c}=\sqrt{\frac{\epsilon_{0} \mu_{0}}{\epsilon_{e f f}}} \frac{1}{C_{a}}
$$

with

$$
C_{a}= \begin{cases}\frac{2 \pi \epsilon_{0}}{\ln (8 H / W+W W / H)} & W / H \leq 1 \\ \epsilon_{0}[W / H+1.393+0.667 \ln (W / H+1.444)] & W / H>1\end{cases}
$$

## Micro-Strip: OPEN



- Micro-strip open end is effectively described by length extension or
- Effective capacitance at end of the line
- The wider the strip, the longer the effective extension


## Micro-Strip: The RADIAL STUB



- Effectively used like Open micro-strip line stub
- Higher capacitance than line
- Better defined location at line


## Micro-Strip: SHORT/ VIA



- Micro-strip via is described by series resistance and inductor to ground
- Series resistance: Depends on DC res. of structure (i.e. specific resistance of material) and on skineffect (current only at outer boundary of via
- Inductance is dominant


## Micro-Strip: BENDS



Tequivalent circuit

- Micro-strip bend should be conducted as mitered bends
- Miter acts as "Mirror" so that the wave "sees" the line going on straight
- Equivalent circuit is a T-diagram with L and C


## Micro-Strip: Slot in Ground Plane



Shown is a slot in the ground plane beneath a micro-strip line.

- (Back)-Current flows around the edges of the slot, thus leading to higher current densities at the edges
- Consequently potential differences results, leading to electrical field
- This leads to higher loss and (field) especially to irradiation
- We have build a very effective antenna! Was this what we wanted?


### 5.3 Coupling between Transmission Lines

## Micro-Strip: COUPLED LINES



- Supports two modes: Even and Odd thus supports two different impedances: $Z_{o}, Z_{e}$.
- Coupling between lines $C=\frac{Z_{e}-Z_{o}}{Z_{e}+Z_{o}}$
- Characteristic impedance of line-system is geometric mean of even and odd mode $Z_{0}=\sqrt{Z_{e} Z_{o}}$
- Usage in coupler structures!
- Unwanted parasitics: Two micro-strip lines in parallel are couplers, thus: Do not get too close


## Micro-Strip: Coupled Lines



Micro-strip couples lines ( $w=1 \mathrm{~mm}, h=1 \mathrm{~mm}, \epsilon_{r}=9.7$ )
Coupling for even $2 w$ spacing between the lines is still significant!

## Stripline



- Shielded to both: top and bottom
- Can be almost fully shielded when vias are used at sides
- Electrical field better confined due to higher effective permittivity $\left(\epsilon_{e f f}=\epsilon_{r}\right)$, low dispersion
- Requires at least three layers


## Stripline: Coupled



Coplanar (a) and broadside (b) coupled striplines

- Coplanar: All in one layer
- Broadside: Lines in different layers


## Coupling of Practical Lines



Micro-strip line has highest coupling, Coplanar coupled stripline best de-coupling Parameters: $h=1 \mathrm{~mm}, Z_{0}=50 \Omega$ for (centered) strip, $\Rightarrow$

| Name | Short | $\left(w / m m, \epsilon_{r}=1\right)$ | $\left(w / m m, \epsilon_{r}=4\right)$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Strip, broadside | SLBS | 2.9 | 1.0 |
| Strip, coplanar | SLCOP | 2.9 | 1.0 |
| Micro-strip | MS | 5.0 | 2.1 |

### 5.4 PCB-Testing

## References

[1] R. E. Collin. Foundations for Microwave Engineering. 2. Aufl. McGraw Hill, 1991.
[2] Nathan Marcuwitz. Waveguide Handbook. Available online under http://bunkerofdoom.com/lit/mitser/index.html (17.8.2012). McGraw Hill, 1951.
[3] D. M. Pozar und D. H. Schaubert. Microstrip Antennas: The Analysis and Design of Microstrip Antennas and Arrays. IEEE Press, 1995.
[4] David M. Pozar. Microwave Engineering. 3. Aufl. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2005.

## 6 2-Port and S-Parameters

## What to Watch Out For

You should learn

- Why RF-Engineers retain from using Z, and Y- Parameters
- What they use instead and why this is useful
- Where these parameters can be used (linear circuits)
- How these parameters (ideally) can be measured
- How all these parameters inter-relate
- And how this fits into the picture of travelling wave and transmission lines


## The Problem

RF-engineering is considered a bit more difficult than "normal" electrical engineering. Some of that is because

- Measuring of (and thinking in) conventional conductance and resistance-parameters is difficult (even though theoretically all these things are valid, if only you have infinite precision)
- We do not have infinite precision because
- short and open become difficult to realize above 100 MHz (depending on exact conditions of course)
- RF-transistors tend to oscillate with reactive load (i.e. short)
- Transmission lines must be considered
- Voltages and currents are difficult to measure directly. It is much easier to detect power!

Thus, we are seeking a description that is more practical

### 6.1 S-Parameters

## Derivation of S-Parameters

Waves on a Transmission line:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \underline{U}(z)=\underbrace{\underline{U}_{1} \cdot e^{-\gamma z}}_{\underline{U}_{+}}+\underbrace{U_{2} \cdot e^{\gamma z}}_{\underline{U}_{-}} \\
& \underline{I}(z)=\underbrace{\frac{U_{1}}{Z} \cdot e^{-\gamma z}}_{\underline{I}_{h}}-\underbrace{\frac{\underline{U}_{2}}{Z} \cdot e^{\gamma z}}_{\underline{I}_{r}}
\end{aligned}
$$

for ports 1 and 2 and $Z$ characteristic impedance of the line and $\gamma=j \beta$ (mostly complex) propagation constant

## Derivation of S-Parameters

Further derivations lead to the practical solution

$$
\begin{aligned}
\underline{a}(z) & =A \cdot e^{-\gamma z} \quad \underline{b}(z)=B \cdot e^{\gamma z} \\
\underline{U}(z) & =(\underline{a}(z)+\underline{b}(z)) \cdot \sqrt{Z} \\
\underline{I}(z) & =(\underline{a}(z)-\underline{b}(z)) / \sqrt{Z}
\end{aligned}
$$

solved to:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& a(z)=\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{U}{\sqrt{Z}}+I \sqrt{Z}\right) \\
& b(z)=\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{U}{\sqrt{Z}}-I \sqrt{Z}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

with $\underline{U}(z)$ and $\underline{I}(z)$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \underline{a}(z)=\frac{\underline{U}_{+}(z)}{\sqrt{Z}}=\underline{I}_{+}(z) \cdot \sqrt{Z} \\
& \underline{b}(z)=\frac{\underline{U}_{-}(z)}{\sqrt{Z}}=-\underline{I}_{-}(z) \cdot \sqrt{Z}
\end{aligned}
$$

## S-Parameters: A Practical Convention



Defining waves at two-ports Measurement of the waves $a_{i}, b_{i}$ instead of $U_{i}, I_{i}$

$$
\binom{\underline{b}_{1}}{\underline{b}_{2}}=\underbrace{\left(\begin{array}{cc}
S_{11} & S_{12} \\
S_{21} & S_{22}
\end{array}\right)}_{\text {scattering matrix }} \cdot\binom{\underline{a}_{1}}{\underline{a}_{2}}, \text { short }[b]=[S] \cdot[a]
$$

Scattering Matrix and Scattering Parameter $S_{i, j}$

## Physical Meaning

The physical meaning and a hint form measuring the S-Parameters

$$
\begin{aligned}
& S_{11}=\left.\frac{b_{1}}{a_{1}}\right|_{a_{2}=0}: \quad \text { Input-reflection for matched output } \\
& S_{22}=\left.\frac{b_{2}}{a_{2}}\right|_{a_{1}=0}: \quad \text { Output-reflection for matched input } \\
& S_{21}=\left.\frac{b_{2}}{a_{1}}\right|_{a_{2}=0}: \quad \text { Transmission factor from input to output } \\
& \quad \begin{array}{l}
\text { with matched output }
\end{array} \\
& S_{12}=\left.\frac{b_{1}}{a_{2}}\right|_{a_{1}=0}: \quad \text { Transmission factor from output to input } \\
&
\end{aligned}
$$

## A Set-up for Measurement



Basically, this is a vector-network-analyzer (VNWA)

## Some Symmetry-Conditions

There are some symmetry-conditions for the scattering matrix. These results can be used in calculation, understanding, and in checking measurement results

- Reciprocity: $S_{21}=S_{12}$, valid in passive, isotropic (esp. non-magnetic) circuits or media. R. practically means (very loosely stated!!) that a cable can be connected the other way around, that an antenna receives and transmits with similar properties.
- Symmetric: $S_{11}=S_{22}$
- Lossless: $\left|S_{11}\right|=\left|S_{22}\right|$


## The Relation to Power

Power that is being transported on a transmission line

$$
P(z)=\operatorname{Re}\left\{\underline{U}(z) \cdot \underline{I}^{*}(z)\right\}=|\underline{a}(z)|^{2}-|\underline{b}(z)|^{2}
$$

- Power of forward travelling wave :

$$
P_{h}=|\underline{a}(z)|^{2}=\frac{\left|\underline{U}_{h}(z)\right|^{2}}{Z}
$$

- backward travelling wave:

$$
P_{r}=|\underline{b}(z)|^{2}=\frac{\left|\underline{U}_{-}(z)\right|^{2}}{Z}
$$

## Relation to Voltage and Current

$a, b$ are calculated from voltage and current via

$$
\binom{a}{b}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\frac{1}{\sqrt{Z_{0}}} & \sqrt{Z_{0}} \\
\frac{1}{\sqrt{Z_{0}}} & -\sqrt{Z_{0}}
\end{array}\right)\binom{U}{I}
$$

And vice versa

$$
\binom{U}{I}=\frac{1}{4}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\sqrt{Z_{0}} & \sqrt{Z_{0}} \\
\frac{1}{\sqrt{Z_{0}}} & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{Z_{0}}}
\end{array}\right)\binom{a}{b}
$$

## Relation to Impedance Matrix I

The impedance matrix

$$
\vec{U}=\binom{U_{1}}{U_{2}}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
Z_{11} & Z_{12} \\
Z_{21} & Z_{22}
\end{array}\right)\binom{I_{1}}{I_{2}}=\overline{\bar{Z}} \vec{I}
$$

And so we find

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \sqrt{Z_{0}}\binom{a_{1}+b_{1}}{a_{2}+b_{2}}=\overline{\bar{Z}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{Z_{0}}}\binom{a_{1}-b_{1}}{a_{2}-b_{2}} \\
\Leftrightarrow & \overline{\overline{1}} \vec{a}+\overline{\overline{1}} \vec{b}=\frac{1}{Z_{0}} \overline{\bar{Z}}(\overline{\overline{1}} \vec{a}-\overline{\overline{1}} \vec{b}) \\
\Leftrightarrow & \left(\overline{\bar{Z}} \frac{1}{Z_{0}}-\overline{\overline{1}}\right) \vec{a}=\left(\overline{\bar{Z}} \frac{1}{Z_{0}}+\overline{\overline{1}}\right) \vec{b} \\
\Rightarrow & \overline{\bar{S}}=\left(\overline{\bar{Z}} \frac{1}{Z_{0}}+\overline{\overline{1}}\right)^{-1}\left(\overline{\bar{Z}} \frac{1}{Z_{0}}-\overline{\overline{1}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

## Relation to Impedance Matrix II

Impedance-Matrix in S-Parameters

$$
\begin{aligned}
Z_{11} & =Z_{0} \frac{\left(1+S_{11}\right)\left(1-S_{22}\right)+S_{12} S_{21}}{\left(1-S_{11}\right)\left(1-S_{22}\right)-S_{12} S_{21}} \\
Z_{12} & =Z_{0} \frac{2 S_{12}}{\left(1-S_{11}\right)\left(1-S_{22}\right)-S_{12} S_{21}} \\
Z_{21} & =Z_{0} \frac{2 S_{21}}{\left(1-S_{11}\right)\left(1-S_{22}\right)-S_{12} S_{21}} \\
Z_{22} & =Z_{0} \frac{\left(1-S_{11}\right)\left(1+S_{22}\right)+S_{12} S_{21}}{\left(1-S_{11}\right)\left(1-S_{22}\right)-S_{12} S_{21}}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Relation to Impedance Matrix III

and, again, vice versa

$$
\begin{aligned}
& S_{11}=\frac{\left(Z_{11}-Z_{0}\right)\left(S_{22}+Z_{0}\right)-Z_{12} Z_{21}}{\left(Z_{11}+Z_{0}\right)\left(Z_{22}+Z_{0}\right)-Z_{12} Z_{21}} \\
& S_{12}=\frac{2 Z_{0} Z_{12}}{\left(Z_{11}+Z_{0}\right)\left(Z_{22}+Z_{0}\right)-Z_{12} Z_{21}} \\
& S_{21}=\frac{2 Z_{0} Z_{21}}{\left(Z_{11}+Z_{0}\right)\left(Z_{22}+Z_{0}\right)-Z_{12} Z_{21}} \\
& S_{22}=\frac{\left(Z_{11}+Z_{0}\right)\left(Z_{22}-Z_{0}\right)-Z_{12} Z_{21}}{\left(Z_{11}+Z_{0}\right)\left(Z_{22}+Z_{0}\right)-Z_{12} Z_{21}}
\end{aligned}
$$

### 6.2 Signal Flow Graphs

## Introduction to Signal Flow Graphs (SFG)

- What is it?
- Each S-Parameter is represented graphically by a directed line (arrow)
- Graphical representation of the circuitry with physical meaning
- Why use it?
- Calculation of S-Parameter circuit (without SW) leads to system of equations
- Physical insight can be gained by looking at the SFG
- Simple circuitries can be solved by hand, just on piece of paper.

Signal Flow Graphs (SFG): Rules

Rule 1: Concatenated graphs


Rule 2: Parallel graphs


Rule 3: Nodes can be moved forth ...


Rule 4: and back

## SFG: Rule 5


$\xrightarrow[{\underset{1}{1-C_{32} \varepsilon_{23}}}_{\mathrm{C}_{1}}^{\mathrm{C}_{21}}]{\mathrm{x}_{2}}{ }_{\mathrm{C}_{32}}^{\mathrm{x}_{3}}{ }^{\mathrm{C}_{43}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{C}_{4}}$
Rule 5: How to simplify a feedback loop

## SFG: Important Elements



A two-port structure

"the" S-parameter-matrix


A transmission line (ideal)


A reflection (which can be a simple load/ measurement device)

## SFG: A Step in Impedance



Zero length step in impedance

- Line 2 ideally matched: $u_{2}^{-}=0 \Rightarrow S_{11}=\frac{u_{1}^{-}}{u_{1}^{+}}=\frac{Z_{2}-Z_{1}}{Z_{2}+Z_{1}}$
- for $S_{21}=\frac{u_{2}^{+}}{u_{1}^{+}}: u_{2}^{+}=u_{1}^{+}+u_{1}^{-}=u_{1}^{+}\left(1+S_{11}\right)$ and thus $S_{21}=1+S_{11}=\frac{2 Z_{2}}{Z_{1}+Z_{2}}$
- Subsequently $S_{22}=-S_{11}$ and $S_{12}=1+S_{22}$
- For normalized wave-amplitudes $a=\frac{1}{2}\left(u^{+} / \sqrt{Z}+i^{+} \sqrt{Z}\right)$
- $S_{21}^{N}=S_{12}^{N}=S_{21} \sqrt{\frac{Z_{1}}{Z_{2}}}=\frac{2 \sqrt{Z_{1} Z_{2}}}{Z_{1}+Z_{2}}$
- $S_{11}, S_{22}$ unchanged


## SFG: A Section of Different-Impedance Line



- Two steps and one ideal line element
- $S_{11}=-S_{22}=\frac{Z_{2}-Z_{1}}{Z_{2}+Z_{1}}$
- Un-Normalized: $S_{21}=1+S_{11}=\frac{2 Z_{2}}{Z_{1}+Z_{2}}, S_{12}=1+S_{22}=\frac{2 Z_{1}}{Z_{1}+Z_{2}}$
- Normalized $S_{21}^{N}=S_{12}^{N}=\frac{2 \sqrt{Z_{1} Z_{2}}}{Z_{1}+Z_{2}}$
- Line section is only phase-shift with $e^{-\gamma l}$


## SFG: Example

Here, calculate and derive the example of the coupler (this at the same time introduces the coupler)

## References

## 7 Matching Networks and their Design

## Learnings

- What is matching?
- Why is it so important?
- How do I design a matching network?
- Essentially matching is all there is in RF techniques. Basically all comes down to matching.
- Extreme case: What is a matching network, that matches a transmission line impedance to the impedance of free space? Answer: That is an antenna...


## Basic Ingredients

- Transmission line theory
- Smith Chart
- S-Parameters
- Power and noise (if that is what we want to match)


## Matching $\neq$ Matching

Not all matchings are created equal (unlike humans)

1. Match the waves: Design the matching network so, that the voltage ripple is minimum ( $\Gamma=0$, VSWR=1)

- Between different stages in a system (e.g. between amplifier stages)

2. Match for optimum power, optimum efficiency (complex conjugate matching)

- Output (evtl. also input) of a (power-) amplifier
- Input/ output to a mixer
- Antenna (match to free space)

3. Match for minimum noise

- Input to a low noise amplifier (LNA)

Only sometimes two or more of the matching goals lead to the same network!

## Two Philosophies

|  | Resistive | Reactive only |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Elements | $R, L, C$ lines | $L, C$ lines |
| Power | consumes power | no power consumption |
| Noise add | Adds noise | no noise added |
| Bandwidth | can be very broad | needs effort for broad |

Most often matching networks are done with lossless elements only!

## Lumped Elements in Smith Diagram (revisited)



Trajectories in Smith-diagram for adjusting/ changing value of lumped elements in simple circuit configurations

## Line Elements in Smith Diagram



Same trajectories as before, now for series and parallel (stubs) line elements. Note that for stubs only valid for $l<\lambda / 4$

## Matching is Moving

What we have seen so far (just putting it together!)

- We can travel around in the smith diagram on shown different trajectories, mostly circles in the SD
- This means: With adding two reactive elements (line or $L, C$ ) you can move from somewhere in the SD to anywhere you like
- That is matching! Just moving around in the Smith chart

Here is the recipe for matching low impedance values:

1. Mark the impedance you want to match in the SD
2. Add series line or $L, C$ until you cross a circle of constant $B$ (parallel reactive elements) that goes through the target impedance
3. Add parallel (shunt) reactive element (stubs or again $L, C$ ) until you are on your target

## Matching: A Pictorial Guide



## Matching: Case I

Some calculation to find the correct impedance matching circuit without running around in Smith's diagram:

- Conductance of entire circuit $Y=\mathrm{j} B_{1}+\frac{1}{Z_{L}+\mathrm{j} X_{1}}$, and $Y$ should become the desired value (the one that we have $Z_{L}$ matched to.
- Bring this into real and imaginary part: $Y=G+\mathrm{j} B \quad Z_{L}=R_{L}+\mathrm{j} X_{L}$ and match them separately: $G+\mathrm{j} B=\mathrm{j} B_{1}+\frac{1}{R_{L}+\mathrm{j}\left(X_{1}+X_{L}\right)}=\mathrm{j} B_{1}+\frac{R_{L}-\mathrm{j}\left(X_{1}+X_{L}\right)}{R_{L}^{2}+\left(X_{1}+X_{L}\right)^{2}}$ and now: $\quad G=\frac{R_{L}}{R_{L}^{2}+\left(X_{1}+X_{L}\right)^{2}}, \quad B=$ $B_{1}-\frac{X_{1}+X_{L}}{R_{L}^{2}+\left(X_{1}+X_{L}\right)^{2}}$
- Solution is then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& X_{1}=\sqrt{\frac{R_{L}-G R_{L}^{2}}{G}}-X_{L} \\
& B_{1}=B+\frac{X_{1}+X_{L}}{R_{L}^{2}+\left(X_{1}+X_{L}\right)^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

- Only valid and working for $G<\frac{1}{R_{L}}$


## Matching: Case II

Consider case II, based on already known results of case I

- Compared to case I just do exchanges

$$
\begin{array}{rlrl}
G & \leftrightarrow & B & \leftrightarrow X \\
B_{1} \leftrightarrow X_{2} & X_{1} & \leftrightarrow B_{2} \\
R_{L} & \leftrightarrow G_{L} & X_{L} & \leftrightarrow B_{L}
\end{array}
$$

- This is now valid in ranges

$$
\begin{aligned}
R & =\operatorname{Re}\left\{\frac{1}{G+\mathrm{j} B}\right\}=\frac{G}{G^{2}+B^{2}} \leq \frac{1}{G} \\
G_{L} & =\operatorname{Re}\left\{\frac{1}{R_{L}+\mathrm{j} X_{L}}\right\}=\frac{R_{L}}{R_{L}^{2}+X_{L}^{2}} \leq \frac{1}{R_{L}}
\end{aligned}
$$

- The good news is: This fills exactly the values for $R_{L}$ that where not covered by case I.
- So with these both structures each and every impedance can be matched to each and every other impedance.


## Matching with Lines: A Pictorial Guide



## Matching: Case III (Lines)

Case III uses a transmission line with fixed (chosen) $Z_{c}$ and adjustable length $\beta l$ as first matching element.

- Remember, transmission lines transform impedances like (the latter valid for lossless lines) $Z_{i n}=$ $Z_{c} \frac{Z_{L}+Z_{c} \tanh \gamma l}{Z_{c}+Z_{L} \tanh \gamma l}=Z_{c} \frac{Z_{L}+j Z_{c} \tan \beta l}{Z_{c}+j Z_{L} \tan \beta l}$
- Entire conductance is thus $Y=j B_{3}+\frac{1}{Z_{c}} \frac{Z_{c}+j\left(R_{L}+j X_{L}\right) \tan \beta l}{R_{L}+j X_{L}+j Z_{c} \tan \beta l}$
- Same game: Split in real an imaginary part and calculate
- Line-length is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tan \beta l= & \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{G Z_{c}^{2} X_{L}}{N}\right)^{2}+\frac{Z_{c} R_{L}-Z_{c} G\left(R_{L}^{2}+X_{L}^{2}\right)}{N}} \\
& -\frac{G Z_{c}^{2} X_{L}}{N} \text { with } N=G Z_{c}^{3}-R_{L} Z_{c}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Matching Case III (continued)

- And the shunt admittance

$$
\begin{aligned}
B_{3}= & B+\frac{R_{L}^{2} t-\left(Z_{c}-X_{L} t\right)\left(X_{L}+Z_{c} t\right)}{Z_{c}\left[R_{L}^{2}+\left(X_{L}+Z_{c} t\right)^{2}\right]} \\
& t=\tan \beta l
\end{aligned}
$$

- This now works for almost! all combination of load and source impedance
- Special case is for $N=0$ (e.g. $R_{L} / Z_{c}=G Z_{c}$ (equal normalized resistance/ conductance at start and end of the matching line). Then $t=\frac{Z_{c} R_{L}-G Z_{c}\left(R_{L}^{2}+X_{L}^{2}\right)}{2 G Z_{c}^{2} X_{L}}$
- Now calculate the line-length by $\beta l=\arctan (\tan \beta l)$
- If $\beta l<0$ add $\pi / 2$ to the result (normal tangent treatment)
- Practically use the shortest line, i.e. smallest positive $\beta l$


## Matching: Case IV (Lines)

In rare situation case III does not work, or in some (e.g. waveguide) technology parallel stubs are not feasible. Thus, case IV uses a stub in series ( $\mathrm{j} X_{4}$ )

- $Z=R+\mathrm{j} X=\mathrm{j} X_{4}+Z_{c} \frac{Z_{L}+Z_{c} \tanh \gamma l}{Z_{c}+Z_{L} \tanh \gamma l}=Z_{c} \frac{Z_{L}+j Z_{c} \tan \beta l}{Z_{c}+j Z_{L} \tan \beta l}$
- Line-length is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tan \beta l= & \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{Z_{c} R X_{L}}{N}\right)^{2}+\frac{R_{L}-R}{N}+\frac{Z_{c} R X_{L}}{N}} \\
& \text { with } N=R X_{L}^{2}-R_{L} Z_{c}^{2}+R R_{L}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

- And the series impedance

$$
\begin{aligned}
X_{4}= & X-Z_{c} \frac{-R_{L}^{2} t+\left(X_{L}+Z_{c} t\right)\left(Z_{c}-X_{L} t\right)}{\left(Z_{c}-X_{L} t\right)^{2}+R_{L}^{2} t^{2}} \\
& t=\tan \beta l
\end{aligned}
$$

- Special case $N=0$ (which I do not know, when it happens) leads to $t=Z_{c} \frac{R-R_{L}}{2 R X_{L}}$


## Matching: Element Realization

| Element | Lumped | Distributed |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $X_{1,2,4}>0$ | Inductor $\mathrm{j} \omega L$ | Series Line $l<\lambda / 4$ |
| $X_{1,2,4}<0$ | Capacitor $\frac{1}{\mathrm{j} \omega \mathrm{C}}$ | Series Line $l<\lambda / 4$ |
| $B_{1,2,3}>0$ | Capacitor $\mathrm{j} \omega C$ | Open shunt line-stub $l<\lambda / 4$ |
| $B_{1,2,3}<0$ | Inductor $\frac{1}{\mathrm{j} \omega L}$ | Shorted shunt line-stub $l<\lambda / 4$ |
| $Z_{0}, l$ | - | Series Line |

- Lines should be as short as possible to reduce frequency selectivity
- All Elements (pictorial: arc in Smith-diagram) should be as small as possible to keep bandwidth as high as possible
- If Element values/ line lengths get too long: Do matching in two steps, this also increases bandwidth of the matching circuit


## Power Matching (Complex Conjugate)



- Goal: Get maximum power (out of the generator) into the load (i.e. an amplifier) (this is $\max \{P\}=$ $i i^{*} \operatorname{Re}\left\{Z_{2}\right\}$ )
- Looking at the real part only is the fundamental difference to matching of no ripple (where real or imaginary does not matter!)
- Real Power Matching (complex conjugate) is achieved for $Z_{i n}^{*}=Z_{L}$
- This is NOT minimum ripple on the transmission line (i.e. $\Gamma \neq 0$ )

In Smith-chart be careful, in such cases you must note the complex conjugate of target impedance, not the "normal" one.

## Noise Matching

- Goal is NOT to have maximum power or minimum ripple. Goal is to have minimum noise
- Analyze circuit (amplifier or mixer) to be matched in-depth. (this really requires to look into the noise behaviour of the amplifier)!
- Find the $\Gamma_{\text {opt }}$ for minimum noise
- Simply design a matching circuitry that perfectly matches to this one.


## References

## 8 Antennas

## Antennas

How to Send and Receive: Antennas and Electromagnetic Waves in Free Space

## Antennas



Different antennae pictures GPL, http://de.wikipedia.org

Antennas at DHBW in Karlsruhe


## What you Learn

- Understand the basic concepts of antennas
- Have terminology and characteristics of antennas at hand
- Understand the mechanism of irradiation
- Know different types (families) of antennas
- Know basic electromagnetism
- Be able to understand and judge different antenna (full wave) simulation schemes and know how to use them


### 8.1 Maxwell's Equations

## Governed by Maxwell's Equations

And God said

## Differential Form Integral Form

| Ampere's circuit law | $\nabla \times \vec{H}=\vec{J}+\frac{\partial \vec{D}}{\partial t}$ | $\oint_{\partial S} \vec{H} d l=I_{f, S}+\frac{\partial \Phi_{D, S}}{\partial t}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Faraday's law | $\nabla \times \vec{E}=-\frac{\partial \vec{B}}{\partial t}$ | $\underset{\partial S}{ } \vec{E} d l=-\frac{\partial \Phi_{B, S}}{\partial t}$ |
| Gauss' law (el.) | $\nabla \cdot \vec{D}=\rho$ | $\oint_{\partial V} \vec{D} d A=Q$ |
| Gauss' law (mag.) | $\nabla \cdot \vec{B}=0$ | $\oint_{\partial V}^{\oint} \vec{B} d A=0$ |

$\overline{\text { And there was light. }}$

## Maxwell's Equations

Maxwell' equations [15 4] for time-harmonic fields (i.e. $f(t) \propto e^{-j \omega t}, \omega$ circular frequency $2 \pi f$

| Three dimensions | One dimension (z) |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\nabla \times \vec{H}=\mathrm{j} \omega \vec{D}+\vec{J}$ | $-\frac{\partial H_{y}}{\partial z}=\mathrm{j} \omega D_{x}+J_{x}$ |
|  | $\frac{\partial H_{x}}{\partial z}=\mathrm{j} \omega D_{y}+J_{y}$ |
| $\nabla \times \vec{E}=-\mathrm{j} \omega \vec{B}-\vec{M}$ | $-\frac{\partial E_{y}}{\partial z}=-\mathrm{j} \omega B_{x}-M_{x}$ |
|  | $\frac{\partial E_{z}}{\partial z}=-\mathrm{j} \omega B_{y}-M_{y}$ |
| $\nabla \cdot \vec{D}=\rho$ | $\frac{\partial D_{z}}{\partial z}=\rho$ |
| $\nabla \cdot \vec{B}=0$ | $\frac{\partial B_{z}}{\partial z}=0$ |


| $\nabla$ | $\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\right)^{T}$ | $\vec{E}$ | electric field |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\vec{D}$ | electric flux density | $\vec{H}$ | magnetic field |
| $\vec{B}$ | magnetic flux density | $\vec{J}$ | electric current density |
| $\vec{M}$ | magnetic current density | $\rho$ | electric charge density |

## Material Equations

Constants from mother nature

| $\epsilon_{0}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 8.8541810^{-12} \mathrm{As} /(\mathrm{Vm}) \\ & \approx 10^{-9} /(36 \pi) \mathrm{As} /(\mathrm{Vm}) \end{aligned}$ | Permittivity |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\epsilon_{r}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 2 \ldots 12 \\ & \ldots 80 \\ & \ldots 1000 s \\ & \approx 80 \\ & \approx 1000 \mathrm{~s} \end{aligned}$ | PCB, Semiconductor <br> (usual) Ceramics <br> (high Diel.Const.) Ceramics <br> Water (in GHz range) <br> Metal |
| $\mu_{0}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 4 \pi 10^{-7} \mathrm{Vs} /(\mathrm{Am}) \\ & 1.2566410^{-6} \mathrm{Vs} /(\mathrm{Am}) \end{aligned}$ | Permeability |
| $\mu_{r}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 700 \\ & 20,000 \end{aligned}$ | Mostly for us <br> Steel <br> $\mu$-metal |

Continuity equation (from MWeq.) $j \omega \rho+\nabla \cdot \vec{J}=0$.

## The Wave Equation (Derivation)

- Assume for derivation: All space is free of sources except for electrical current (and subsequently the charge)
- Curl $(\nabla \times)$ of second MWEq: $\nabla \times(\nabla \times \vec{E})=-\mathrm{j} \omega \mu \nabla \times \vec{H}$
- Put in first $\nabla \times \vec{H}=\mathrm{j} \omega \epsilon \vec{E}+\vec{J}: \nabla \times(\nabla \times \vec{E})=-\mathrm{j} \omega \mu(\mathrm{j} \omega \epsilon \vec{E}+\vec{J})$
- Reorganize and use vector identity $\nabla \times(\nabla \times V)=\nabla(\nabla \cdot V)-\nabla^{2} V$
- And another of MWEq $\nabla \cdot \vec{E}=\frac{q}{\epsilon} \Rightarrow \nabla \times(\nabla \times \vec{E})=\frac{\nabla \cdot q}{\epsilon}-\nabla^{2} \vec{E}=\frac{\nabla \cdot q}{\epsilon}-\triangle \vec{E}$

Wave-equation $\triangle \vec{E}+\omega^{2} \epsilon \mu \vec{E}=\mathrm{j} \omega \mu \vec{J}+\frac{\nabla \cdot q}{\epsilon}$
Or in only z-dimension $\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial z^{2}} \vec{E}+\omega^{2} \epsilon \mu \vec{E}=\mathrm{j} \omega \mu \vec{J}+\frac{1}{\epsilon} \frac{\partial q}{\partial z}$

## Solution of the Wave Equation

Only consider the one-dimensional wave-equation.

- "Guess" the solution to be $E_{x}=e_{x} e^{ \pm j k_{z} z}$ (other vector components similar)
- Put into the wave-equation (no sources. $\vec{J}=0$ )
- $-k_{z}^{2} e_{x}+\omega^{2} \epsilon \mu e_{x}=0$ and all other components equally.
- Hence, equation fulfilled, if only $k_{z}= \pm \omega \sqrt{\epsilon \mu}$, Dimension of it is m (length) and so is $c=\frac{1}{\sqrt{\epsilon_{0} \mu_{0}}}=$ $299,792,458 \mathrm{~m} / \mathrm{s}$ the speed of light (in vacuum)


## Solution of the Wave Equation

- In principal this works for all field magnitudes and all derived potentials equally well with the same result.
- When all three dimensions show non-zero derivatives, there is $k^{2}=\omega^{2} \epsilon \mu=k_{x}^{2}+k_{y}^{2}+k_{z}^{2}$
- A little more interesting is the solution of Maxwell's equations under certain boundary conditions.


## The Plane Wave

- Suppose the wave is travelling in z-direction, so there is only a variation in z-direction and thus $\frac{\partial}{\partial x}=\frac{\partial}{\partial y}=0$, then $\epsilon \nabla \cdot \vec{E}=\frac{\partial E_{z}}{\partial z}=0$ and so $E_{z}=0$
$\Rightarrow$ The electric field is transversal, it has only vector components perpendicular to the propagation direction.
- Further $\nabla \times \vec{E}=-\mathrm{j} \omega \mu \vec{H}=\left(\begin{array}{c}\frac{\partial E_{y}}{\partial z} \\ -\frac{\partial E_{x}}{\partial z} \\ 0\end{array}\right)=-\mathrm{j} k\left(\begin{array}{c}E_{y} \\ -E_{x} \\ 0\end{array}\right)$ And so the magnetic field is also transversal and can be calculated directly from the components of the electric field.
- This kind of wave is called a transversal electro-magnetic or TEM wave.



## Wave-Impedance

Consider electrical field only in y-direction $\left(E_{y} \neq 0, E_{x}=0 \Rightarrow H_{x}=\mathrm{j} \frac{1}{\omega \mu} \frac{\partial E_{y}}{\partial z}\right)$

- With a z-propagating wave $E_{y}=e_{y} e^{-\mathrm{j} k z}$ do partial derivative
- $H_{x}=h_{x} e^{-\mathrm{j} k z}=-\mathrm{j} k \frac{1}{\omega \mu} \mathrm{j} e_{y} e^{-\mathrm{j} k z}$
- We already know $k=\omega \sqrt{\epsilon \mu}$
- And so $\frac{e_{y}}{h_{x}}=\sqrt{\frac{\mu}{\epsilon}}=Z$
- Wave-Impedance of free space $Z_{0}=\sqrt{\frac{\mu_{0}}{\epsilon_{0}}}=120 \pi \Omega \approx 377 \Omega$
- All equally valid for other constellations of field components


## Polarization

- Linear Polarization: $\frac{E_{x}}{E_{y}}=c c$ is a real quantity
- Two waves with linear polarization are orthogonal (practical use: law-enforcement radio (old), terrestrial satellite TV (channel separation)
- Drawback: If you happen to have a receiver (geometrically) turned to receive the other polarization, you are out of luck
- Circular polarization: Field components "turn" around the propagation vector. Field components $\frac{E_{x}}{E_{y}}= \pm \mathrm{j}$ are $\pm 90^{\circ}$ out of phase (i.e. $E_{x}=0 \rightarrow E_{y}=\max$, and vice versa) 10
- Two kinds: Right-handed ( -j ) and Left-handed (j) circular polarized waves
- There is also some power in some component of the electric (or magnetic) field


## Flow of Energy

- We already know: In plane waves, where there is electric field, there is magnetic, and they are in phase!
- For many applications (antennas are one of them) in the end we are interested in the energy flow, not particularly in electric or magnetic field.
- Poynting-Vector $\vec{S}=\vec{E} \times \vec{H}^{*}$ defines the snapshot of the energy density.
- For our TEM-wave in z-direction this is

$$
\vec{S}=\left(\begin{array}{c}
E_{y} H_{z}^{*}-E_{z} H_{y}^{*} \\
E_{z} H_{x}^{*}-E_{x} H_{z}^{*} \\
E_{x} H_{y}^{*}-E_{y} H_{x}^{*}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
0 \\
E_{x} H_{y}^{*}-E_{y} H_{x}^{*}
\end{array}\right)
$$

- So generally energy flow is only in the direction of propagation
- Power transmitted through a surface (or even closed surface) is $P=\operatorname{Re}\left\{\frac{1}{2} \oint_{S} \vec{E} \times \vec{H}^{*}\right\}$


## (Computational) Electromagnetic

Design of Antennas (nowadays) is much of using Computational Electro-magnetics

Computational Electro-magnetics is nothing else than solving Maxwell's equations (or the wave-equation) under some boundary conditions

## Boundary Conditions



Boundary conditions on dielectric/ magnetic (possibly conducting) surfaces with normal unity vector $\hat{n}$ [12]

- $\hat{n} \times\left(\vec{E}_{1}-\vec{E}_{2}\right)=-\vec{M}_{s}$ The tangential electric field "jumps" by the magnetic surface current.
- $\hat{n} \times\left(\vec{H}_{1}-\vec{H}_{2}\right)=\vec{J}_{s}$ The tangential magnetic field "jumps" by the electric surface current.
- $\hat{n} \cdot\left(\vec{D}_{1}-\vec{D}_{2}\right)=\rho_{s}$ The normal dielectric flux "jumps" by the charge on the surface
- $\hat{n} \cdot\left(\vec{B}_{1}-\vec{B}_{2}\right)=\rho_{m s}$ The normal magnetic flux jumps by the magnetic charge on the surface


## Boundary Conditions on Conductors

conductor


Boundary conditions on conducting surfaces with normal unity vector $\hat{n}$

- Ideally conducting $\hat{n} \times \vec{E}_{1}=0$ The tangential electric field is zero.
- Finite conductivity $\vec{E}_{\tan 1}=Z_{e} \vec{J}_{s}$ The tangential electric field can be modelled with the electric surface current and a surface resistance of the material.
- Ideally conducting $\hat{n} \times \vec{H}_{1}=\vec{J}_{s}$ The tangential magnetic field is defined by the electric surface current. (induction).
- Finite conductivity $\vec{H}_{t a n 1}=Z_{m} \vec{J}_{m}$ The tangential magnetic field can be modelled with the magnetic surface current and a surface resistance of the material.


## Effects of Boundary Conditions

The above boundary conditions give rise to all of the well-known observations at boundary conditions such as


- Refraction: Change of direction of propagation, when the material (permittivity or permeability or both) changes
- Partial reflection (same thing)
- Total reflection, when a wave out of dense medium touches the surface to a less dense medium at a specific angle and under a specific polarization
- Reflection on conducting media (mirror)


### 8.2 Antenna Parameters

## The First Antenna



Electrically small linear antenna $(l \ll \lambda)$ (Hertz's Dipol) with current feed.

Coordinate System, or What is $E_{\theta}$ ?


Cartesian and spherical coordinate system (b) and the earth (a) GPL, de.wikipedia.org

- Local orthogonal coordinate system [15, 3]
- Transformation of a location vector $\left(\begin{array}{c}x \\ y \\ z\end{array}\right) \leftrightarrow\left(\begin{array}{c}r \\ \phi \\ \theta\end{array}\right)$


## Coordinate System, or What is $E_{\theta}$ ? II



- Local orthogonal coordinate
system 15, 3]
- Transformation of a location
$\operatorname{vector}\left(\begin{array}{c}x \\ y \\ z\end{array}\right) \leftrightarrow\left(\begin{array}{l}r \\ \phi \\ \theta\end{array}\right)$

$$
\begin{array}{l|l}
r=\sqrt{x^{2}+y^{2}+z^{2}} & x=r \sin \theta \cos \phi \\
\phi=\arctan \left(\frac{x}{y}\right) & y=r \sin \theta \sin \phi \\
\theta=\arccos \left(\frac{z}{\sqrt{x^{2}+y^{2}}}\right) & z=r \cos \theta
\end{array}
$$

## Coordinate System, or What is $E_{\theta}$ ? III


(a) Vector with only $\theta$-component at different locations in x-z- ( $\phi=0$ or $\theta$ )-plane, (b) One vector with $\phi$-components in x-y $(\theta=\pi / 2$ or $\phi)$-plane and another vector at another location with only $r$-(radial) component

## Coordinate System, or What is $E_{\theta}$ ? IV

- Transformation of a vector like $\left(\begin{array}{c}E_{x} \\ E_{y} \\ E_{z}\end{array}\right) \leftrightarrow\left(\begin{array}{c}E_{r} \\ E_{\phi} \\ E_{\theta}\end{array}\right)$
- Into Cartesian coordinates $E_{y}=E_{r} \sin \theta \sin \phi+E_{\phi} \cos \phi+E_{\theta} \cos \theta \sin \phi$

$$
E_{z}=E_{r} \cos \theta-E_{\theta} \sin \theta
$$

$$
E_{r}=E_{x} \sin \theta \cos \phi+E_{y} \sin \theta \sin \phi+E_{z} \cos \theta
$$

- Into Spherical coordinates $E_{\theta}=E_{x} \cos \theta \cos \phi+E_{y} \cos \theta \sin \phi-E_{z} \sin \theta$

$$
E_{\phi}=-E_{x} \sin \phi+E_{y} \cos \phi
$$

- Note: $\phi, \theta$ are related to the LOCATION, where the vector is present, not the angles between components of the vector.

Field Components: Some Remarks


- Radial component $\left(E_{r}\right)$ is an outward bound component, thus for a spherical TEM-wave radiated from the origin it is zero.
- $E_{\theta}= \pm\left(E_{x} \cos \phi+E_{y} \sin \phi\right)$ at the vertical z-axis $(\theta=0, \pi)$
- $E_{\theta}=-E_{z}$ everywhere in the x-y-plane
- $E_{\phi}$ independent of $\theta$ (elevation angle), $E_{\phi}=E_{y}$ on x-axis and $E_{\phi}=-E_{x}$ on y-axis


## And Now Again: The First Antenna



Electrically small antenna $(l \ll \lambda)$ with current feed. Current is constant on the wire. ... And it's far field pattern

## Radiation Pattern



- Radiation Pattern: 6] radiation pattern: 1. The variation of the field intensity of an antenna as an angular function with respect to the axis. (188) Note: A radiation pattern is usually represented graphically for the far-field conditions in either horizontal or vertical plane.


## Radiation Pattern II

- Radiation Pattern (continued)
- Describes the strength of the field at certain points in space.
- Sometimes 3-dimensional (very nice, but difficult to quantify)
- Most often as 2 -dimensional cuts (e.g. $x$ - $y$-plane, $x$-z-plane)
- We are most concerned with far-field radiation pattern
- Often given in ( dB ), in this case relative to isotropic radiator $(\mathrm{dBi})$. So this is relative to the antenna that radiates its power equally to all directions


## E \& H-Plane



- E-plane: The plane that is parallel to the vector of electric field (here this is any vertical plane (e.g. x-z-plane))
- H-plane: The plane that is parallel to the vector of the magnetic field (here this is the horizontal ( $x$ - $y$ )-plane)


## Nice, But Not-existing: Isotropic Antenna



- Imagine an antenna that radiates equally in all directions
- Its electrical field would be like $E_{\theta}=E_{\phi} \propto \frac{e^{-j k r}}{4 \pi r}$
- Standard antenna to compare all the others to
- Radiates its power $P$ equally distributed to all directions, so that power density is $S=\frac{P}{4 \pi r^{2}}$


## Further Parameters: Gain \& Directivity

- Directivity, Gain (6, 14]
antenna gain: The ratio of the power required at the input of a loss-free reference antenna to the power supplied to the input of the given antenna to produce, in a given direction, the same field strength at the same distance. Note 1: Antenna gain is usually expressed in dB. Note 2: Unless otherwise specified, the gain refers to the direction of maximum radiation. The gain may be considered for a specified polarization. Depending on the choice of the reference antenna, a distinction is made between:
- absolute or isotropic gain $\left(G_{i}\right)$, when the reference antenna is an isotropic antenna isolated in space;
- gain relative to a half-wave dipole $\left(G_{d}\right)$ when the reference antenna is a half-wave dipole isolated in space and with an equatorial plane that contains the given direction;
- gain relative to a short vertical antenna $\left(G_{r}\right)$, when the reference antenna is a linear conductor, much shorter than one quarter of the wavelength, normal to the surface of a perfectly conducting plane which contains the given direction. [RR] (188) Synonyms gain of an antenna, power gain of an antenna.


## Gain, Directivity, \& Power



- Mostly used: isotropic gain, relative to the isotropic antenna
- Potential loss of antenna included in gain.
- Gain of small dipole: $G_{i}=1.76 \mathrm{~dB}=1.5$, for $100 \%$ radiation efficiency
- Gain of half wave dipole: $G_{i}=2.16 \mathrm{~dB}=$ 1.64,
- EIRP Effectively isotropic radiated power: Power delivered to an isotropic antenna to generate the same field strength: $E I R P=$ $P_{t} G_{i}, P_{t}$ : total power delivered to the antenna.
- ERP as above but referenced to half wave dipole


## Parameters for Power and Circuits I



- Two kinds of power make the total power $P_{t}$ (e.g. 10])

1. Power radiated $P_{\text {rad }}$
2. Power lost in the antenna (network) $P_{l}$
$P_{t}=P_{r a d}+P_{l}$

- Antenna efficiency $\eta=\frac{P_{r a d}}{P_{t}}$ (for our simulated small dipole $\eta=89 \%$ reached).


## Parameters for Power and Circuits II



- Definition of power allows definition of resistors:

1. Radiation resistance $R_{r a d}=2 \frac{P_{r a d}}{I^{2}}=2 \frac{U^{2}}{P_{r a d}}$
2. Loss resistance $R_{l}=2 \frac{P_{l}}{I^{2}}=2 \frac{U^{2}}{P_{l}}$
3. Total Antenna resistance is thus $R_{t}=R_{l}+R_{r a d}+\mathrm{j} X$ and this is the one we need to match the circuit to

## Some Analytics on the Small Dipole

- Field of the small dipole is the solution of the wave equation excited by a very small current element.
- Generalized Solution of the wave-equation $\left(\triangle+k^{2}\right) G\left(\vec{r}, \vec{r}^{\prime}\right)=\delta\left(\vec{r}^{\prime}\right)$
- In different dimensions 12]

| Dimension | Green's Function $G$ | Singularity |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | $-\frac{\mathrm{j}}{2 k} e^{\mathrm{j} k\left\|x-x^{\prime}\right\|}$ | - |
| 2 | $-\frac{\mathrm{j}}{4} H_{0}^{(1)}\left(k\left\|\vec{r}-\vec{r}^{\prime}\right\|\right)$ | $\ln \left(\left\|\vec{r}-\vec{r}^{\prime}\right\|\right)$ |
| 3 | $-\frac{1}{4 \pi} \frac{\exp \left(-\mathrm{jk} k\left\|\vec{r}-\vec{r}^{\prime}\right\|\right)}{\left\|\vec{r}-\vec{r}^{\prime}\right\|}$ | $\frac{1}{\left\|\vec{r}-\vec{r}^{\prime}\right\|}$ |

$H_{0}^{(1)}$ is Hankel-function first kind, order zero

- To get the electric field out of a current density distribution use $\vec{E}=\int_{V}\left(-\mathrm{j} \omega \mu \overline{\bar{I}}-\frac{\mathrm{j}}{\omega \epsilon} \nabla^{\prime} \cdot \nabla^{\prime} \cdot\right) G \vec{J} d v^{\prime}$
$\overline{\bar{I}}$ is the unity matrix and ' denote operation at source location.


## More Analytics

In the end the field of the electrical small antenna (current filament) with current $I$ and length $l$ [10, 15]

- $E_{r}=Z_{0} \frac{I l \cos \theta}{2 \pi r^{2}}\left(1+\frac{1}{\mathrm{j} k r}\right) e^{-\mathrm{j} k r}$ decaying fast with $\propto \frac{1}{r^{2}}$
- $E_{\theta}=\mathrm{j} Z_{0} \frac{k I l \sin \theta}{4 \pi r}\left(1+\frac{1}{\mathrm{j} k r}-\frac{1}{(k r)^{2}}\right) e^{-\mathrm{j} k r}$
- $H_{\phi}=\mathrm{j} \frac{k I l \sin \theta}{4 \pi r}\left(1+\frac{1}{\mathrm{j} k r}\right) e^{-\mathrm{j} k r}$
- In Far Field (i.e. $r>\frac{2 l^{2}}{\lambda}$ ) $E_{r}=0$ and electric and magnetic field are in phase
- Example

| Name | I or d | $r>\ldots$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Dipol | $\lambda / 2$ | $\lambda / 2$ |
| Parabolic | $20 \lambda$ | $800 \lambda$ |
| Laser |  |  |
| $(\lambda=632 \mathrm{~nm})$ | 1 mm | 3.16 m |

## What is Wrong with the Small Antenna?

Why does not everybody just use the small linear antenna? It radiates, it is small, so what is wrong with it?

- It is more an open than an antenna (very low real part of the antenna impedance, but very high (negative) imaginary
- You almost get no power into it
- Very ineffective, impossible to match, very high reactance since it is essentially an open


### 8.3 Linear Antennas

## $\lambda / 2$-Dipole

What can be better than a small antenna stub?

- Resonance.....
- Simply remember from transmission line theory: An open transformed over a $\lambda / 4$ line turns out to be an open... (this at least brings the reactance into manageable regions)


Pattern of the $\lambda / 2$-Antenna


Parameter of the $\frac{\lambda}{2}$ - dipole are $Z=(77.4+\mathrm{j} 45.4) \Omega$, Gain $G_{i}=2.16 \mathrm{dBi}$, vertical polarization. This thing is matchable.

## More on the Wire-Antenna




Simulation on wire antenna with length $l=1.5 \mathrm{~m}(\lambda / 2$ at 100 MHz$)$

- Note distinct (and sharp) resonances
- Granted, also reflection of -2.4 dB (at 100 MHz ) is not good, but here, we can easily design a matching network
- Note, how the forward gain changes.
- See NEC-Simulation of lambda_2.nec over 30 to 800 MHz , browse through the gain-pattern vs. frequency


Radiation patterns for a $2 \times 1.5 \mathrm{~m}$ long symmetrical wire antenna for various frequencies.

## More to Know

- Ground-effects and how to use ground in antenna design (( $\lambda / 4)$-Monopoles)
- (Finite) thickness and (finite) conductivity of the wire antenna (lower quality factor, higher bandwidth)
- Propagation of waves in the atmosphere (Ground-wave, reflection and transmission through the ionosphere (Short-Wave radio and Satellite (GPS \& TV)))
- Concept of effective area of an antenna
- Connecting unbalanced antennas to balanced circuit design (the BALUN)
- More on polarization (polarization ellipsoid and Poincare-sphere, cross-polarization)

[^1]I am using 4nec2 available from http://home.ict.nl/ arivoors/.
Further information (Manuals etc.) are also found on http://www.nec2.org/.

## Method of Moments

How to numerically calculate such problems (focus here is on wire-grids, but - with few modifications also generally working)


1. Divide the wire structure into many small current elements $i_{k}$ (just as the small antennas) $\vec{J}\left(\vec{r}^{\prime}\right)=$ $\sum_{k=1}^{N} i_{k} \vec{b}_{k}\left(\vec{r}^{\prime}\right)$ ( $k$ are base-functions, $\vec{r}^{\prime}$ just a local coordinate)
2. Calculate the (electric or magnetic) field from each of the current elements (let's take $i_{k}$ ) $\vec{E}_{k}(\vec{r})=$ $\int_{l^{\prime}} \overline{\bar{G}}\left(\vec{r}-\vec{r}^{\prime}\right) i_{k} \vec{b}_{k}\left(\vec{r}^{\prime}\right) d r^{\prime}$

## Method of Moments II

3. Now "measure" how much all the other antennas receive of this field (let's take receiver element $j$ ) $z_{k, j}=\int_{l} \vec{b}_{j}(\vec{r})\left(\int_{l^{\prime}} \overline{\bar{G}}\left(\vec{r}-\vec{r}^{\prime}\right) i_{k} \vec{b}_{k}\left(\vec{r}^{\prime}\right) d r^{\prime}\right) d r$
4. Tabulate all these "reaction" values into a (big) matrix $\overline{\bar{Z}}$, multiply it by the value of the current elements and equate it to the vector of the excitation current $\overline{\bar{Z}} \vec{I}=\vec{I}_{E}$ or as an example for three elements $\left(\begin{array}{lll}z_{11} & z_{12} & z_{13} \\ z_{21} & z_{22} & z_{23} \\ z_{31} & z_{32} & z_{33}\end{array}\right) \cdot\left(\begin{array}{c}i_{1} \\ i_{2} \\ i_{3}\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{c}0 \\ i_{E 2} \\ 0\end{array}\right)$
5. Solve the equation $\vec{I}=\overline{\bar{Z}}^{-1} \vec{I}_{E}$
6. And now further process $\vec{I}$ for example to calculate the radiated field, or to calculate an efficiency and so on.

## Method of Moments Discussed

+ Around since a long time (1960s, NEC from 1970)
+ Very well suited for geometries with infinite homogeneous media, exceptionally suited for wire structures
+ Adapted to planar structures (like micro-strip circuits)
+ Many "tricks" and extensions exist to calculate virtually every problem
- Each current elements reacts with all others: full (densely populated) matrix
- Calculation of integrals (because of singularity) often cumbersome
- Difficult to handle 3-dimensional structures $\rightarrow$ every boundary must be modelled with current (or charge) elements, thus matrix not only dense, but also huge
$\Rightarrow$ Matrix solution will slow down the process


## Lorentz Reciprocity Theorem



- State only result and consequences (some), derivation involves a lot of vector calculus and assumptions on surface integrals [4]
- Result $\int_{V} \vec{E}_{1} \cdot \vec{J}_{2} d V=\int_{V} \vec{E}_{2} \cdot \vec{J}_{1} d V$
- For infinitesimal current elements $\vec{E}_{1} \cdot \vec{J}_{2}=\vec{E}_{2} \cdot \vec{J}_{1}$
- Main consequence: A system of two antennas (one transmit, on receive) can be turned around and exhibits the same characteristic
- An antenna has the same characteristic in transmit and receive operation.


### 8.4 Wave Propagation

## A Communication System



- Power received at Antenna 2 (and used in the resistor) is $\frac{P_{2}}{P_{1}}=G_{1} G_{2}\left(\frac{\lambda}{4 \pi r}\right)^{2}$
- Or in $\left.\mathrm{dB} \frac{P_{2}}{P_{1}}\right|_{d B}=\left.G_{1}\right|_{d B}+\left.G_{2}\right|_{d B}-20 \log _{10}\left(\frac{r}{1 \mathrm{~km}}\right)-20 \log _{10}\left(\frac{f}{1 G H z}\right)-92.44 d B$ The last term includes the $4 \pi$ and speed of light.


## System Examples

| Parameter | Bluetooth | GSM | Astra 1E |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $P_{1}$ | 10 dBm | 2 W | 85 W |
| $G_{1} / \mathrm{dB}$ | 0 | 0 | 32 |
| EIRP | 10 dBm | 33 dBm | 51 dBW |
| $G_{2} / \mathrm{dB}$ | 0 | 11 | 35 |
| $f / \mathrm{GHz}$ | 2.4 | 0.9 | 12 |
| $\lambda / \mathrm{cm}$ | 12.5 | 33.3 | 2.7 |
| $r$ | 10 m | 35 km | $36,000 \mathrm{~km}$ |
| $\left(\frac{\lambda}{4 \pi r}\right)^{2} / \mathrm{dB}$ | -60 | -122.4 | -204 |
| $P_{2} / P_{1} / \mathrm{dB}$ | -60 | -111.4 | -137 |
| $P_{2}$ | -50.0 dBm | $-78,4 \mathrm{dBm}$ | 1.6 pW |

Colored quantities are input comments

- GSM: (Free space) received power does not limit range (Sens. BTS -104 dBm)
- Sat-TV: Note the exceptionally low received power! Noise power in 10 MHz band is $-104 \mathrm{dBm}=0.04 \mathrm{pW}(\mathrm{SNR}=16 \mathrm{~dB})$ in best case scenario.


## Fresnel-Zones



Fresnel ellipsoid (source: Wikipedia (modified), GPLD)

- Antenna are in the focal point of the ellipsoid
- Ellipsoid generated such that path difference between outer rim and direct path is max. $\frac{\lambda}{2} \rightarrow$ most of the energy is transmitted within this zone.
- If disturbances within this zone occur, they will directly affect path loss (covering it half increases PL by 6 dB )
- Width $b$ of the zone at a distinct location is $b=\sqrt{\frac{n \cdot \lambda \cdot d_{S} \cdot d_{E}}{d}}, b_{\max }=0.5 \cdot \sqrt{\lambda \cdot d}$


## Wave-Propagation in Not-So Free Space

- Wave propagation disturbed by
- Obstacles
- Fringing
- Reflection etc.
- Free space model just seen represents a best case scenario
- For e.g. IEEE 802.15.4 communication systems the scenario is usually adopted like
$\left.\frac{P_{2}}{P_{1}}\right|_{d}=\left\{\begin{array}{ll}p l(1 \mathrm{~m})-10 \gamma_{1} \log (d) & d \leq 8 \mathrm{~m} \\ p l(8 \mathrm{~m})-10 \gamma_{8} \log (d / 8) & d>8 \mathrm{~m}\end{array}, \quad p l(1 \mathrm{~m})=20 \log \left(\frac{4 \pi f}{c_{0}}\right)\right.$ With values

| Parameter | 900 MHz | 2400 MHz |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $p l(1 \mathrm{~m})$ | -31.53 dB | -40.2 dB |
| $p l(8 \mathrm{~m})$ | -49.59 dB | -58.5 dB |
| $\gamma_{1}$ | 2 dB | 2 dB |
| $\gamma_{8}$ | 3.3 dB | 3.3 dB |

## Path-Loss Models at GHz Communication

Example: Take the path-loss models that base ZigBee (IEEE 802.15.4) [1]


## (Possible) Goals for Antenna Design

- Small, cheap, easy to manufacture, easy to hide (in hand-set or in car)
- Mechanics (e.g. wind resistance)
- Efficient
- Exhibiting the desired radiation pattern
- High-Gain (directive) vs. isotropic
- Polarization (vertical/ horizontal, left/ right circular)
- Broadband, at least over the entire range of interest, which is sometimes multi-standard (FM-radio and TV, GSM800/900/1800 and UMTS, FM-radio and GPS,...)
- Beam can be steered (Radar and target seeking applications, TV-SAT for mobile, cellular for higher efficiency)


### 8.5 Phased Arrays

## Phased Arrays



- Arrange multiple (general $N$, here: 4 ) dipoles
- Feed them (we need to discuss how) with the desired phase relation $\left(I_{2}=I_{1} e^{\mathrm{j} \alpha}\right)$ between them

1. Broadside (y-direction, $\phi=0$ ) radiation: $\alpha=0$
2. For other direction $\alpha$ must compensate the phase-difference $\beta$ out of different distance to observation $s=d \sin \phi . \beta=2 \pi \frac{s}{\lambda}$

## Phased Array II



- Feeding continued

3. Generally maxima occur for $\beta-\alpha=2 \pi n$, which is (simplest possible) $\alpha=\beta=2 \pi \frac{d}{\lambda} \sin \phi$.
4. In-axis radiation (x-direction, $\phi=90^{\circ}$ ) requires $d=\lambda$

## Phased Array III



- Seeking the minima, that are found with $\sum_{k=0}^{N} e^{\mathrm{j}(k \alpha-k \beta)}=0$
- Minima are at $N(\beta-\alpha)=2 \pi n \Leftrightarrow \beta-\alpha=\frac{2 \pi n}{N}$
- For broadside and all equal phase $(\alpha=0)$ there is $\beta=\frac{2 \pi}{N}=2 \pi \frac{d \sin \phi}{\lambda}$
- Total width of the main lobe is $2 \phi=\arcsin \left(\frac{\lambda}{N d}\right)$


## Phased Array Patterns



Differently phased and spaced linear arrays

## More Antenna Characteristics



- 3 dB Beam-width defined as the angle between both $G_{\max } \pm 3 \mathrm{~dB}$-lines (here $\approx 45^{\circ}$ )
- Side-lobe attenuation $G_{\text {max }} / G_{\text {sidelobe }}$ (here $\approx 11.8 \mathrm{~dB}$ )
- Front-to-Back-Ratio $G_{\text {max }} / G_{\text {back }}$ (here $\approx 17 \mathrm{~dB}$ )


## Feeding Network

- Above we had the luxury of having an individual feed for each antenna
- Most flexible
- Most expensive
- Only used where absolutely needed (e.g. digital beam forming)
- Usually feed via transmission lines of correct length
- Many different configurations are possible, esp. for directing the beam (Butterfly-matrix, Rotmanlens)



### 8.6 Yagi Uda

## Yagi-Uda Antenna

Commonly used directive antenna for radio and TV reception


- Composed of (roughly) three sections

1. Feed antenna (folded, or $\lambda / 2$-dipole)
2. Directors $L_{D}<L$, act as transmission line structure, that guides a surface wave
3. Reflector $L_{R}>L$, usually only one, can also be build as a reflecting grid

- Homogeneous (all directors equally) and in-homogeneous (directors individually optimized)


## Yagi Antenna Design

Some designs for in-homogeneous Yagi-Uda antennas after classical paper [18] "Yagi Antenna Design"

| $N$ | $d / \lambda$ | $L_{R} / \lambda$ | $L / \lambda$ | $L_{D 1} / \lambda$ | $L_{D 2} / \lambda$ | $L_{D 3} / \lambda$ | $L_{D 4} / \lambda$ | $L_{D 5} / \lambda$ | $L_{D 6} / \lambda$ | $L_{D 7} / \lambda$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 0 | 0.2 | 0.482 | 0.453 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $D 8-N / \lambda$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1 | 0.2 | 0.482 | 0.453 | 0.424 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3 | 0.2 | 0.482 | 0.455 | 0.428 | 0.424 | 0.428 |  |  |  |  |
| 4 | 0.25 | 0.482 | 0.455 | 0.428 | 0.42 | 0.42 | 0.428 |  |  |  |
| 10 | 0.2 | 0.482 | 0.457 | 0.432 | 0.415 | 0.407 | 0.398 | 0.39 | 0.39 | 0.39 |
| 15 | 0.2 | 0.482 | 0.455 | 0.428 | 0.42 | 0.407 | 0.398 | 0.394 | 0.39 | 0.386 |
| 13 | 0.308 | 0.475 | 0.4495 | 0.424 | 0.424 | 0.42 | 0.407 | 0.403 | 0.398 | 0.394 |

Simulation done at $f=100 \mathrm{MHz}(\lambda=2.99 \mathrm{~m})$. Wire radius (this is critical!) is 1.3 mm

## Pattern of Yagi Antennas



Radiation patterns for the afore mentioned design values

## Yagi: Results

- Gain of a Yagi-Antenna depends much on size (length of the structure), less on actual number of elements
- Radius of wire is important (as reactance of directors is used to adjust the phase velocity of the surface waves on the director section)
- Length of feeding antenna does not much influence the overall directivity and my thus be chosen for optimum match


## Planar Yagi




- Yagi in micro-strip-technology (for about 10 GHz ) [8] for use in an array, design-focus is band-width
- Note: Ground-plane is reflector, Balun for symmetric feed
- Substrate $h=0.635 \mathrm{~mm}, \epsilon_{r}=10.2$ (RT Duroid) $L_{d r i}=8.7, L_{d i r}=3.3 \mathrm{~mm}$, total area about $\left(\lambda_{0} / 2\right)^{2}$
- $\mathrm{FBR}>12 \mathrm{~dB}, G=3 \ldots 5 \mathrm{~dB}$


## More to Know on Wire Antennas

- Increase bandwidth through tapering (e.g. log-periodic (dipole) design). Bandwidth multi-octave possible.
- Self-complementary antennas (possible more metal-sheet antennas) (Babinet-principle)
- Helix-antenna


### 8.7 Planar Antennas

## Micro-strip Patch Antenna



- Nothing more than a structure (simplest: rectangle) on a substrate with appropriate feed.
- Very popular, since can be easily integrated with micro-strip circuit
- About a zillion different designs, rules, applications, modifications etc. exist for a lot of purposes


## Micro-strip Patch Antenna II



- Operation determined by $\lambda / 2$-resonance.
- Dependent on excited mode $f_{c} \approx \frac{c}{2 L \sqrt{\epsilon_{r}}}$ or $f_{c} \approx \frac{c}{2 W \sqrt{\epsilon_{r}}}$ or mixture thereof
- Operation is to radiate through the slots at the edges of the patch


## Micro-strip Patch Antenna III



Current distribution on 9.9 GHz simulated patch antenna (more in simulation with Ansoft) Parameters:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\text { RT-Duroid5880 } \epsilon_{r}=2.2(\text { in } \mathrm{mm}): h=0.508, w_{\text {line } 1}=1.5, w_{\text {line } 2}=0.27, l_{\text {line } 1}=2.9, w_{\text {patch }}=10, \\
l_{\text {patch }}=10
\end{gathered}
$$

## Micro-strip Patch Antenna IV



- Current density highest at edges (as in normal micro-strip transmission line)
- Radiation of electrical field along the edges (through slot)
- Field polarized as determined by the excited mode


## MS-Patch Rough Design Considerations

- Resonance \& bandwidth: Narrow band device, tolerances important
- Matching with usual methods (e.g. quarter-wave line, stubs)
- Correct mode (polarization and radiation pattern)
- Size depends on $\lambda / 2$ and dielectric. Higher dielectric $\rightarrow$ smaller size $\rightarrow$ field more confined under patch in dielectric $\rightarrow$ efficiency decreases
- Coupling to other elements (in array) or finite extend of ground plane


## Patch Results: In Colors



3D-view of the far field and generating current

## Patch Results: Match



Impedance (a) in Smith Diagram and (b) reflection from micro-strip patch element.

## Patch Results: Field



Electrical field (a) and overall gain (b) from micro-strip patch element.

## Patch Results: Gain



Gain vs. frequency of the patch antenna

## Model of MS Patch

- Patch described as a cavity (resonating cavity is below the patch) with
- Magnetic walls at the (normally radiating) edges
$\Rightarrow$ Perfectly open, but non-radiating (that's what is the simplification)
- Electric walls as patch and ground (perfectly conducting)
- When dielectric is thin $\left(h \ll \lambda \sqrt{\epsilon_{r}}\right)$ then only modes on the patch in $x$ - y direction
- Solution of Maxwell's equation (within these boundaries) yields the modes (not done in all beauty here)
- Electrical field under the patch is thus $E_{z}=E_{0} \cos (m \pi x / l) \cos (n \pi y / l), n, m=0,1,2 \ldots$


## Model of the MS Patch II

- Dominant mode for $m=1, n=0 T M_{10}$, again resonance frequency is $f_{c} \approx \frac{c}{2 L \sqrt{\epsilon_{r}}}$
- Further modes (or a wanted mode distribution) can be done via
- Different feeds (at two sides or coax at specific location)
- (Slightly) modify patch (e.g. slots or cut the edges)
- Excitation of further modes used to determine radiation characteristic

1. Polarization characteristics
2. Circular polarization

## MS Patch for Circular Polarization



- Micro strip patch antenna for circular polarization with dual feed
- MS-quadrature hybrid used to $90^{\circ}$-phase-shift the signals
- Single feed CP patch antennas also available, eventually simpler in design


## Microstrip Array Antennas



Picture of "ulfbastel", GPL, http://de.wikipedia.org

- Micro-strip patches well suited for array applications (RF automotive radar, high gain antennae
- Simple integration possible


## Current and Coupling on MS-Patch Array



Example after [12] of a micro-strip patch array $f=10.6 \mathrm{GHz}$. Patch 1 fed, current on 2-4 scaled by 10 .

## Even More on Printed Antennas

And there is so much more to know about these antennas

- Other than rectangular elements ([log] spirals, circular, ellipsoids) for larger bandwidth and different radiation patterns (polarization)
- Self-complementing antennas (Babinet's principle)
- Modified structures such as slots in the patch (or other geometric structures)
- Stacked patches (for higher band-width)
- Slot antennas (i.e. slot in ground plane)

- Respective aperture couple patch antennas (where through the slow an usual patch is excited)


### 8.8 Small Antennas

## Small Antennas

Wouldn't it be nice to have an antenna of no physical extend (or at least well integrated on a chip)?

- Goal for antennas is to have a moderately high radiation resistance
$\Rightarrow$ Low $Q$ (Quality factor) is desired but not by means of losses to the network! [2]
- Fundamental limit $Q \approx \frac{1}{k r}$ for $k r=\frac{2 \pi}{\lambda} r \ll 1 r$ radius of encloding shere
- Even this has never been reached or exceeded



## Small Antenna Limits

Consequences on the limit to small antennas

- High $Q=$ high reactive part $=$ low (radiation) resistive part
- Difficult to match (need to compensate reactance, and increase to resistive level of driver/ receiver)
- $Q=\Delta f / f$ so low band-width
- Conductor losses are still there: Small antenna with low input resistance have low efficiency!
- Bottom-line: No matter what: Effective Antennas will have some size! [at best they even resonate]


## Shrinking Dipole



## Fold the Dipol



- Folding the Dipol retains the electrical lengths and resonance by reducing extend ( 9 cm compared to 16 cm )
- But adds currents in opposite directions (fields cancel)
- Adds inductance (through bends) and capacitance (through couplings)
$\Rightarrow$ Sonewhat more compact than the linear dipol, but
- Performance inbetween smaller and resonant dipol (even though this thing is at resonance)


## Antennas at DHBW in Kalrsruhe



## Inverted F-Antenna

Small and somewhat more broadband.


## Inverted F-Antenna



- More on the design is found in [16]
- Height $H$ determines input impedance ( $0.1 \ldots 0.11 \cdot \lambda$ for $50 \Omega$ )
- Parameters for a.m. IFA: | $f, \lambda$ | 1250 MHz | 239 mm | $H$ | 33 mm | $0.138 \lambda$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $L_{B}$ | 46.5 mm | $0.195 \lambda$ | $L_{F}$ | 20 mm | $0.084 \lambda$ |


## Comments on Inverted F-Antenna

- Function:
- In effect the IFA is a monopole-antenna ( $\lambda / 4$-antenna over conducting ground)
- Folded down $\left(L_{F}\right)$ (to reduce height of the antenna)
- Folding, and then parallel to ground adds capacitance
- Compensation of this capacitance done by short stub $\left(L_{B}\right)$ (i.e. inductance)
- Application
- Popular in cellular phones
- Can be printed (micro-strip technology), then Planar Inverted F-Antenna (PIFA)


### 8.9 Mobile Antennas

## Antenna Design for Mobile Communication

Some Design requirements

- Small in size, fitting into design (marketing)
- Small in price, easy to manufacture
- Effective, good SAR (specific absorption ratio) (= do not radiate into the brain!)
- Work in vicinity of head, hand, housing, battery
- Multi-band ...or broadband
- GSM (824-894, 890-960, 1710-1880, 1850-1990 MHz) and more
- UMTS (1900-2170 MHz) and growing (see also GSM)
- WLAN / WPAN (2400-2485, 5150-5350, 5725-5875 MHz)
- GPS (1575 MHz) (RHCP)
- Video (DVB-T, -H) (170-230, 470-862, 1452-1492 MHz)
- Multiple-Antennas: Diversity and MIMO [Multi-In-Multi-Out]


## General Concepts

- Combination of above "tricks"
- Loading (parasitic elements)
- Reducing physical size (folding/ meandering)
- Combining many antennas (for same or different task)
- Printed technology, LTCC-technology (chip antennas)


## PIFA



- More degrees of freedom: $(L / W),(W / S)$ compared to IFA
- Resonance at $f_{\text {res }} \approx \frac{c}{4(w+l+\gamma h)} \quad \gamma$ determines influence of grounding strip $(\gamma=1$ for $s \ll w, 0$ otherwise)
- $s$ Large, bandwidth large (up to $10 \%$ ), $s$ small BW down to $1 \%$
- Modifications to put slots in the radiating element will meander the current, thus increasing electrical length


## Meandered Patch



After (5]

## Combining PIFA, PIFA, and IFA



After (7, 9]

### 8.10 Examples in Mobile Phones

## Examples of Antennas in Mobile Phones



Examples of Antennas in Mobile Phones


## Examples of Antennas in Mobile Phones



Motorola Wire Antenna (left) and Wirelike HTC TRIN100 Antenna Battery


## Examples of Antennas in Mobile Phones



### 8.11 Aperture Antennas

## Aperture Antennas

- "Aperture" = Opening
- What is meant by "Aperture-Antenna" is an antenna that radiates through an opening of something (chapter close to [17]). Examples are
- Radiation through a hole in a screen
- Radiation through a (tapered) end of a hollow waveguide (horn antenna)

- In Optics: Radiation from the end of a fiber or the laser
- Note one (weired sounding) thing:
- Energy transport does not happen in the conductor through current
- Energy is transported within the medium (maybe air) between the conductors
- Wires (also our power cables) are only the guiding elements for the energy carrying fields


## Huygens' Principle

Christiaan Huygens (The Netherlands, The Hague 1629 to 1695) stating: "Each point of a (propagating) wavefront can be seen as the source of a new (infinitesimally) elementary wave"


Black material: Electric and magnetic ideal conductor forcing tangential fields of $E$ and $H$ to zero. (For only electrically conducting material $J_{S} \neq 0$ )

## Huygens' Principle



- With a little more formalism this means
- Know the fields $(E, H)$ (hopefully zero at most locations) on a closed surface
- The field distribution can be replaced by a set of sources like: Surface current $\vec{J}=\hat{n} \times \vec{H}$ and surface magnetic current $\vec{M}=\hat{n} \times \vec{E}$
- Now forget about everything, which is within the sphere (or in picture above) behind the infinite wall
- Way: Field distribution $E, H \rightarrow$ Source distribution $J, M \rightarrow$ use of Green's function: (Far) Field distribution of radiation.


## Simple Horn Antenna I



- Impedance of fundamental mode in waveguide $Z_{w}=\frac{Z_{0}}{\sqrt{1-\left(\frac{\lambda}{2 a}\right)^{2}}}$
- Must be matched to impedance of free space $Z_{0}=120 \pi \Omega \approx 377 \Omega$


## Simple Horn Antenna II



- Done by a taper (suppose that even in the horn only the fundamental mode is present). Impedance at the horn's end $Z_{H}=\frac{Z_{0}}{\sqrt{1-\left(\frac{\lambda}{2 w}\right)^{2}}}$
- The larger $w$, the closer $Z_{H}$ to $Z_{0} \rightarrow$
- Steep horn (danger of multiple mode excitation)
- Long horn (large and heavy)
- Geometrical limits for $w$


## Fields in the Waveguide

- For completeness field distribution of fundamental $T E_{10}\left(H_{10}\right)$ mode in waveguide and horn (replace $a$ by $w)$ is $E_{x}=0, E_{y}=\frac{\mathrm{j} \pi \omega \mu H_{0}}{a k_{c}^{2}} \sin \frac{\pi x}{a}, E_{z}=0 H_{x}=\frac{\mathrm{j} \beta \pi \omega \mu H_{0}}{a k_{c}^{2}} \sin \frac{\pi x}{a}, H_{y}=0, H_{z}=H_{0} \cos \frac{\pi x}{a}$
- All time and $z$ dependent like $e^{-\mathrm{j}(\omega t-k z)}$
- Transverse wave-coefficient $k_{c}=\sqrt{\omega^{2} \mu \epsilon-k^{2}}$


## Far Field is Fourier-Transform

- The convenient relation is that the far field distribution (in angular coordinates $\phi, \theta$ ) is the FourierTransform (over $x, y$ ) of the field distribution in the (horn) aperture The derivation of this statement is cumbersome and of course several assumptions are required. We save all this and state some consequences
- Rectangular distribution (uniform in amplitude, equal phase $\rightarrow$ slow opening of the horn $\rightarrow$ long horn) transforms to $\sin (x) / x \rightarrow$ high side-lobes (E-Plane)
- E-Plane: Parallel to the electric field. Here, constant field throughout the vertical cut.
- H-Plane: Parallel to magnetic field, Here, amplitude is tapered according to the cos distribution $\rightarrow$ lower side-lobes.


## Horn: Practical Example



Dimensions: $80.6 \mathrm{~mm}, 226.3 \mathrm{~mm}, 62.6 \mathrm{~mm}$ WR90-Dimension: $22,86 \mathrm{~mm}$
Data and figures taken from ETS-Lindgren (Horn3160) http://www.ets-lindgren.com

## Octave-Band Horn, Practical Data



Dimensions: $531.4 \mathrm{~mm}, 880.5 \mathrm{~mm}, 398.6 \mathrm{~mm}$, WR650-Dimension: 165.1 mm ,
Data and figures taken from ETS-Lindgren (Horn3160) http://www.ets-lindgren.com

## Octave-Band Horn, Practical Data II



More on the same horn (3161-1), introducing new parameter: antenna factor
Data and figures taken from ETS-Lindgren (Horn3160) http://www.ets-lindgren.com

## Effective Area



- Effective Area
- For large antennas determined by $(\propto)$ the geometrical size
- For small antenna can be viewed as the area that the antenna draws the field lines upon itself
- Effective Aperture (Area) of an antenna: $A_{e}=\frac{P_{r e c}}{S}$ with (total) power received by a (receiving) antenna $P_{\text {rec }}$ and power density $S$ at the location of the antenna
- Effective area is proportional to for all antennas and all antenna types
- Relation to gain is calculated to $\frac{A_{e}}{G}=\frac{\lambda^{2}}{4 \pi}$


## More on Aperture Antennas

- Again, almost every thinkable form of aperture has been tried for some purpose
- Horns, that are bend
- Circular (conical) horns, or rectangular to circular tapers (the circle is the most efficient aperture form)
- Horns with multiple excited modes for desired aperture illumination
- Corrugated horns for more bandwidth and better radiation characteristic (esp. cross polarization 10 N12.3])
- Slot antennas (Bow-Tie or dual to the dipole)


### 8.12 Reflector

## Reflector Antennas

- Known: The higher the efficient area,the higher the gain: $\frac{A_{e}}{G}=\frac{\lambda^{2}}{4 \pi}$
- For large antennas $\left(A_{e}>\lambda^{2}\right)$ the effective area is in the range of about the geometrical area
- In this case quasi-optical approaches can be used
- Focusing of radiation with lens or parabolic mirror


## Parabolic Mirror



Heinrich Hertz Turm in Hamburg (Photo GPL, de.wikipedia.org)


Parabol



Parabolic mirror, classical approach and feed as in shell antenna

- Description is parabolic with $y=a x^{2}$
- Focal point $f=1 /(4 a)$, where all rays have the same length
- Area (geometric) of course $A_{g}=\pi r^{2}$
- And gain is $G=4 \pi \frac{A_{e}}{\lambda^{2}}=q\left(\frac{2 \pi r}{\lambda}\right)^{2}$
- Area-efficiency $q=\frac{A_{e}}{A_{g}} \approx 0.5 \ldots 0.6<1$


## Parabolic Mirror II



- Area efficiency always $<1$. Determined by
- Illumination (best: spherical wave with homogeneous illumination of the mirror)
- Shadowing through mechanical structure and feeding network (horn). $\Rightarrow$ Remedy shell configuration (off-center feed)
- Homogeneous illumination: Higher side-lobes (rect $\rightarrow-14 \mathrm{~dB}$ )
- Backward (off angle) radiation determined by fringing/ diffraction at edges, radiation over the edges, secondary radiation from feeding structure
- Required accuracy of mirror about $\lambda / 100 \ldots \lambda / 50$


## Practical Results on Parabolic Mirror

- Gain 30 ... 40 dB
- HWBW $\Theta_{3 d B} \approx 70^{\circ} \frac{\lambda}{d}$
- Simple satellite Dish (Kathrein CAS06), $2 r=0.57 \mathrm{~m}, f=11.7 \ldots 12.75 \mathrm{GHz} \Rightarrow \lambda \approx 0.027 \mathrm{~m}$

$G=34.9 \ldots 35.9 \mathrm{dBi} \theta_{3 d B}<2.8^{\circ}$
- Linear: $G=3161$ Calculate Area-efficiency $q=G /\left(\frac{2 \pi r}{\lambda}\right)^{2}=71 \%$


## Reflector Antennas Advanced

- Offset Feed
- Folded Mirrors (e.g. Cassegrain-Antenna with Hyperboloid)

- Polarization and frequency selective reflecting surfaces


## Summary

- A walk through antennas:
- Wire Antennas (short, resonant ( $\lambda / 2$ ), long, directional [Yagi-Uda])
- (Phased) Array Antennas for beam forming and higher directivity
- Often practically used: IFA and P-IFA
- Printed antennas: Micro-strip Patch
- Aperture, (Pyramidal) horn
- Reflector Antennas
- The tools
- Analytical (estimation)
- Method of Moments (NEC and Ansoft HFSS)
- FDTD/ FIT (Animation and CST MWS)
- Transmission between antennas
- The zoo of Parameters
- Radiation pattern (Gain, Directivity, Front-Back-Ration, Side-Lobes, aperture angle)
- Input impedance
- Parameters (in EMC), (Antenna factors, effective area)
- The principles
- Maxwell's equation/ wave equation
- Reciprocity
- Poynting vector
- Huygens' principle


## References

[1] IEEE Computer Society. Part 15.4: Wireless Medium Access Control (MAC) and Physical Layer (PHY) Specifications for Low-Rate Wireless Personal Area Networks (WPANs). Techn. Ber. 802.15.4. IEEE, 2006.
[2] Constantine A. Balanis. Antenna Theory, Analysis and Design. 3. Aufl. New York: Wiley Interscience, 2005.
[3] I. N. Bronstein und K.A. Semendjajew. Taschenbuch der Mathematik. 23. Aufl. Leipzig: BSB B.G. Teubner Verlagsgesellschaft, 1987.
[4] R. E. Collin. Foundations for Microwave Engineering. 2. Aufl. McGraw Hill, 1991.
[5] N. P. Cummings. "Low Profile Integrated GPS and Cellular Antenna". Magisterarb. Virginia Polytechnic Institute und State University, 2001. URL: http://scholar.lib.vt.edu/theses/available/ etd-11132001-145613/unrestricted/etd.pdf.
[6] Federal Standard 1037C, Telecommunications: Glossary of Telecommunication Terms. ITS Institute for Telecommunication Siences. 1996. URL: http://www.its.bldrdoc.gov/fs - 1037/fs 1037 c .htm
[7] Rafal Glogowski und Custodio Peixeiro. "Multiple Printed Antennas for Integration Into Small Multistandard Handsets". In: IEEE Antennas and Wireless Propagation Letters 7 (2008), S. 632-635.
[8] N. Kaneda u. a. "A Broad-Band Planar Quasi-Yagi Antenna". In: IEEE Trans. Antennas Propagat. 50.8 (Aug. 2002), S. 1158-1160.
[9] D. Manteufel u. a. "Design Consideration for Integrated Mobile Phone Antennas". In: International Conference on Antennas and Propagation. Bd. 11. Apr. 2001.
[10] H. Meinke und F.W. Grundlach. Taschenbuch der Hochfrequenztechnik. 5. Aufl. Berlin: Springer, 1992.
[11] Numerical Electromagnetics Code. WIKIPEDIA. 2008. URL: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ Numerical\%5C_Electromagnetics\%5C_Code.
[12] G. Oberschmidt. Waveletbasierte Simulationswerkzeuge für planare Mikrowellenschaltungen. Bd. 293. 9. Düsseldorf: VDI Fortschritt-Berichte, 1998.
[13] K. Ogawa und T. Uwano. "A Diversity Antenna for Very Small 800-MHz Band Portable Telephones". In: IEEE Trans. Antennas Propagat. 42.9 (Sep. 1994), S. 1342-1345.
[14] K. Rothammel. Antennenbuch. 10. Aufl. Stuttgart: Militärverlag der DDR, 1984.
[15] J. A. Stratton. Electromagnetic Theory. McGraw Hill, 1941.
[16] SuperNEC- Inverted F Antenna. SuperNEC. 2008. URL: http://www.supernec.com/ifa.htm.
[17] H.-G. Unger. Hochfrequenztechnik in Funk und Radar. Stuttgart: Teubner, 1988.
[18] P.P. Viezbicke. Yagi Antenna Design. National Institute of Standards amd Technology. 1976. URL: http://tf.nist.gov/timefreq/general/pdf/451.pdf.

## 9 Passive Components and Filters

## What you Gain

- Overview about important passive components
- See and learn the difference between realizations
- Narrow-band lossless versus broadband lossy

What Components?

- Resistor, Capacitor, Inductor and inductive coupler
- Attenuators
- Power dividers
- Directional Couplers
- Filters


### 9.1 Some Lumped Elements

## Wire Above a Conducting Plane

A simple wire of Diameter $D$, length $l$ in a distance $s \leq l$ above a conducting plane represents an inductance


- The formula for this is given by $L=\frac{l \mu_{0} \ln \left(\frac{2 s}{D}+\sqrt{\left(\frac{2 s}{D}\right)^{2}-1}\right)}{2 \pi}$
- Comparison between the two pictures shows immediately why THT-technology is not well suited for RF
- Also: Thick wires are better (if wire at all)


## Resistor



- Inductance mostly from wiring
- Cap from meanders of resistive material
- Note that this structure does not resonate
- At high frequencies this is much, but not a simple ohmic resistor (high here defined as measure how much $C$ and $L$ influence the total value of impedance)
- Total impedance is $Z=\mathrm{j} \omega L+\frac{R}{1+\mathrm{j} \omega C R}$
- No resonacne, but definetely decay in real part of impedance with frequency


## Capacitor



Equivalent Circuit for a cap. Observe that this, is a filter circuit that can resonate.


Real (acc. to EPCOS) behaviour of cap of 0.3 pF and 15 pF . How bad is the non-idealism really?

## Inductor



Equivalent Circuit of an inductor


Pictures of some sample devices (not to scale) Note (if only one thing) that there is a parallel resonant circuit with L parallel C , and thus resonating at $f_{\text {res }}=\frac{1}{2 \pi \sqrt{L C}}$

## Inductor II

Some parameters for inductors as given by vendors (here: EPCOS)

- $f_{L}$ Measuring frequency of inductor (some 100 MHz )
- $f_{Q}$ Measuring frequency for quality factor (e.g. 800 or 1500 MHz )
- $Q$ Quality factor (defined here as $Q=\omega L / R$ ), only about 10 to 50
- $f_{\text {res }}$ Resonant frequency range few 100 MHz to 9 GHz , the higher the inductance, the lower $f_{\text {res }}$
- $R_{\max }$ DC-resistance, low inductance maybe $\ll 1 \Omega$, high inductance $>1 \Omega$

```
Impedance IZ
versus frequency \(I\)
measured with impedance analyzer
```

HP 4191A / HP 4194A


Some Values

## Transformer



- Two coupled inductances $L_{1}, L_{2}$ show mutual coupling $M=k \sqrt{L_{1} L_{2}}, k=0 \ldots 1$
- With close coupling $\frac{U_{1}}{U_{2}}=\frac{I_{2}}{I_{1}}=\frac{N_{1}}{N_{2}}=\frac{1}{N}$ and thus transformation of impedances $R_{1}=\frac{U_{1}}{I_{1}}=\frac{U_{2} / N}{I_{2} N}=$ $\frac{1}{N^{2}} \frac{U_{2}}{I_{2}}$
- A resistance $R_{2}$ on the secondary side (2) is seen as $1 / N^{2} R_{2}$ on the primary side. This is used to transform high impedances on the secondary side to a lower level on the primary (e.g. for matching crystals)
- Center tab used for Balanced to unbalanced transformation (e.g. ADC, antennas)
- Practical RF coupling ratio $N^{2}=1 \ldots 50$


### 9.2 Attenuators

## Simple Resistive Attenuators



For an attenuation ratio $c=u_{2} / u_{1}$ the resistors are to be dimensioned as (equal characteristic impedances $Z_{c}$ at both sides)

- T-circuit $R_{T 1}=\frac{1-c}{1+c} Z_{c}, R_{T 2}=\frac{2 c}{1-c^{2}} Z_{c}$
- $\Pi$-circuit calculated from $T$-model via star-triangular transform: $R_{P 1}=R_{T_{1}} \frac{2 R_{T 1}+R_{T 2}}{R_{T 2}}=R \frac{1-c^{2}}{2 c}$ $R_{P 2}=R \frac{1+c}{1-c}$
- Note: There is power to be absorbed in the attenuator, thus thermal issues may occur!
- See next slide for example values


## Attenuator: Resistive Values

Resistor values for attenuators at $Z_{c}=50 \Omega$

| Att. $/ \mathrm{dB}$ | $U_{1} / U_{2}(\operatorname{lin})$ | $R_{P 1} / \Omega$ | $R_{P 2} / \Omega$ | $R_{T 1} / \Omega$ | $R_{T 2} / \Omega$ |
| ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| 0.25 | 0.97 | 1.4 | 3474.6 | 0.7 | 1736.9 |
| 0.5 | 0.94 | 2.9 | 1737.7 | 1.4 | 868.1 |
| 1 | 0.89 | 5.8 | 869.5 | 2.9 | 433.3 |
| 2 | 0.79 | 11.6 | 436.2 | 5.7 | 215.2 |
| 3 | 0.71 | 17.6 | 292.4 | 8.5 | 141.9 |
| 5 | 0.56 | 30.4 | 178.5 | 14.0 | 82.2 |
| 10 | 0.32 | 71.2 | 96.2 | 26.0 | 35.1 |
| 20 | 0.10 | 247.5 | 61.1 | 40.9 | 10.1 |
| 30 | 0.03 | 789.8 | 53.3 | 46.9 | 3.2 |

### 9.3 Couplers

## Resistive (6dB) Power Divider



- $R=Z_{c} / 3$
- Only 6 dB dividing ratio, that means half the power is lost in the divider (beware of heating and maximum power delivered to the divider.
- Broadband, only limited by frequency response of resistor and dispersion of line.
- S-Matrix (ideally)

$$
\overline{\bar{S}}=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & S_{12} & S_{13} \\
S_{12} & 0 & S_{23} \\
S_{13} & S_{23} & 0
\end{array}\right),\left|S_{23}\right|=\left|S_{12}\right|=\left|S_{13}\right|=\frac{1}{2}
$$

## Wilkinson (Power) Divider



- Goal: Build a lossless power divider, here this requires e.g. $S_{23}=0$ and $\left|S_{12}\right|=\left|S_{13}\right|=1 / \sqrt{2}$
- When ideally matched: no power consumed in resistor, in case of mismatch, resistor decouples port 2 and 3.
- Many different designs exist. Equations $Z_{2}=K \sqrt{R Z_{c}}, Z_{3}=\frac{1}{K} \sqrt{R Z_{c}}, Z_{L 2}=\frac{K^{2} R}{K^{2}+1}, Z_{L 3}=\frac{R}{K^{2}+1}$, $K$ coupling factor can be chosen.
- Choose $K=1 Z_{L 2}=Z_{L 3}=Z_{c} \Rightarrow R=2 Z_{c} \Rightarrow Z_{2}=Z_{3}=\sqrt{2} Z_{c}$ for a matched equal power divider.


## Branch Line (Quadrature) Coupler



- Dimension $Z_{2}=Z_{c}, Z_{1}=Z_{c} / \sqrt{2}, l_{1}=l_{2}=90^{\circ}$. Note: Length here electrical length, physical dimension may differ because of different $\epsilon_{\text {eff }}$. Length effectively measured to centers of junctions.
- 3 dB directional coupling ratio from port 1 (or 4 ) to ports 1 and 2, port 4 (or port 1 ) decoupled.
- At decoupled port sum of mismatch of port 2 and 3 is found
- Phase difference between port 2 and 3 is $90^{\circ}$, thus also the name $90^{\circ}$-coupler


## Directional Coupler



Coupling ratio is determined by

$$
C=20 \log \frac{\sqrt{1-c^{2} \cos ^{2} \beta l}}{c \sin \beta l}
$$

With known maximum coupling ratio (see coupled micro-strip lines) of $c=\left(Z_{e}-Z_{o}\right) /\left(Z_{e}+Z_{o}\right)$
Coupling maximum occurs at length $l=\lambda / 4$ (quarter wavelength) long, it again vanishes $(C=0)$ at half wavelength $l=\lambda / 2$.

## Couplers etc. more to Know

- Unequal power power-splitters
- Frequency response adjustment through multi-section coupling and matching
- Multi-arm (evtl. non-binary) splitters
- $180^{\circ}$ and Rat-race hybrid rings
- Modifications to directional couplers: The Lange-coupler


### 9.4 Filters

## Filters \& Resonators

Filters are nothing else than (frequency) selectively matching input an output port. I.e. rejecting certain signals, but transferring others.

Possible technologies are:

| Name | $f$-range $/ \mathrm{Hz}$ | $Q_{u}$ | Application |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Lumped | 20k-500M | $500 . .20$ | many |
| Helical- | $100 \mathrm{M}-1 \mathrm{G}$ | $200 . .20$ | input filter CT1 |
| Ceramics- | $200 \mathrm{k}-30 \mathrm{M}$ | $2000 . .500$ | IF-f. in receivers |
| Quartz- | $40 \mathrm{k}-80 \mathrm{M}$ | $10^{4} \ldots 10^{5}$ | Radio-watches |
| SAW- | $30 \mathrm{M}-3 \mathrm{G}$ | 5000.2000 | TV, cellular IF |
| TRL | $100 \mathrm{M}-10 \mathrm{G}$ | $200 . .10$ | UHF, mm-wave |
| Ceramic-line | $400 \mathrm{M}-2 \mathrm{G}$ | ca. 500 | DECT, GSM/ UMTS |
| FBAR- | $2 \mathrm{G}-3 \mathrm{G}$ | $5000 . .2000$ | cellular, ISM |
| Dielectric res. | $1 \mathrm{G}-30 \mathrm{G}$ | $1000 . .200$ | $\mu$-wave oscillator |
| Cavity | $2 \mathrm{G}-30 \mathrm{G}$ | $1000 . .20$ | Radar, high power |

## Series- and Parallel Resonator



Series



## Quality Factor

- Definition of quality factor is $Q=\frac{\text { Power stored in field }}{\text { Power lost in resistor }}$
- Can be equivalentely derived to $Q=\frac{f_{0}}{B}$ with bandwidth $B=f_{2}-f_{1}$ and $f_{0}$ the resonance frequency

Series


Quality factors for series and parallel resonant circuits

|  | Series | Parallel |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Inductor | $Q=\frac{\omega L}{R}$ | $Q=\frac{1}{\omega L G}$ |
| Capacitor | $Q=\frac{1}{\omega C R}$ | $Q=\frac{\omega C}{G}$ |

## Lumped Element Resonator



- THE prototype of resonator. Used as equivalent circuit for almost all types of resonators
- Resonant frequency determined by $f=\frac{1}{2 \pi \sqrt{L C}}$, i.e. $L$ and $C$ cancel each other.
- Unloaded Quality factor $Q_{u}=R /(\omega L)=\omega C R$ for paralle! resonance!
- Loaded Quality factor $Q_{L}=\omega C\left(R \| R_{s}\right)$ factors inner resistance of source in.
- For $R_{s}=50 \Omega$ loaded $Q_{L}$ very bad. Thus, different couplings required (e.g. with cap $C_{c}$ ) $\Rightarrow$ if $C_{c}$ chosen small enough, $R_{s}^{\prime}$ get very high and presents much smaller load to resonant circuit.


## Cavity Resonator



- Basically hollow metallic (often rectangular or spherical) box, that cages the electromagnetic field in.
- For rectangular cavity resonant frequency of modes of order ( $n, m, l$ )
$f_{n, m, l}=\frac{1}{\epsilon_{r} \epsilon_{0} \mu_{0}} \sqrt{\left(\frac{n}{2 a}\right)^{2}+\left(\frac{m}{2 b}\right)^{2}+\left(\frac{l}{2 d}\right)^{2}}$
- Solution of the field follows boundary conditions at the walls, e.g. for 101-mode
$k_{101}=\sqrt{\left(\frac{\pi}{a}\right)^{2}+\left(\frac{\pi}{d}\right)^{2}}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E_{y}=\frac{-2 A^{+} k_{101} Z_{0} a}{\pi} \sin \frac{\pi x}{a} \sin \frac{\pi z}{d} \\
& H_{x}=\frac{2 j A^{+} a}{d} \sin \frac{\pi x}{a} \cos \frac{\pi z}{d}, \quad H_{z}=-2 j A^{+} \cos \frac{\pi x}{a} \sin \frac{\pi z}{d}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Dielectric Resonator


$\mathrm{TE}_{01 \delta}$ Mode in cylindrical dielectric resonator

- Mostly cylindrical, basically the same as cavity, except, field is en-caged more "loosely" only in high permeability material $\epsilon_{r} \approx 30 \ldots 200$.
- Coupling via field from (micro-strip) line
- Use mostly (but not limited to) $\mu$-wave oscillators $\Rightarrow$ Dielectric Resonator Oscillator.
- Mostly used is $\mathrm{TE}_{01 \delta}$ Mode, where there is no angular ( $\phi$ ), some radial $(r)$ and only a fraction ( $\delta$ ) of $z$-dependence


## More on Dielectric Resonator

- Quality factor is determined by $Q_{u}=\epsilon_{r}^{\prime} / \epsilon_{r}^{\prime \prime}$. Common measure is quality factor times measurement frequency $Q_{u} f_{0}$ up to $100.000 \cdot 1 / s$. (Losses are linear with frequency)
- Approximation for resonance frequency $f_{0} \approx \frac{233}{\sqrt{\epsilon_{r}^{\prime}} \sqrt[n]{V}}$, with $V$ the volume of the puck
- Example: $\epsilon_{r}^{\prime}=37$, diameter 5.5 mm , height $2.3 \mathrm{~mm} f_{0}=10.1 \mathrm{GHz}$
- Observe temperature stability $\tau_{f}$, where frequency drift $\left(\tau_{f} f_{0} \Delta T\right)=\Delta f$ with temperature change $\delta T$
- Coupling and tuning screw determine exact frequency and quality factor



## Model of the Resonator


$Z$ as seen by the MS is

$$
\begin{aligned}
Z & =\frac{N^{2} R}{1+j 2 Q \Delta \omega / \omega_{0}} \text { with } \\
Q & =\frac{R}{\omega_{0} L} \quad \omega_{0}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{L C}} \\
\Gamma_{\text {res }} & =\frac{\left(Z_{0}+N^{2} R\right)-Z_{0}}{\left(Z_{0}+N^{2} R\right)+Z_{0}}=\frac{N^{2} R}{2 Z_{0}+N^{2} R}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Model of the Resonator



When $\Gamma$ has been chosen,

$$
\frac{N^{2} R}{2 Z_{0}} Z=g=\frac{\Gamma}{1+\Gamma}
$$

called coupling factor of resonator is found. It leaves degree of freedom, since only $N^{2} R=2 Z_{0} \Gamma /(1+\Gamma)$ is determined

## Surface Acoustic Wave Filters

Excite (electrically) an acoustic wave on the surface of a (piezo) crystal and (re)detect it


Structure of SAW-filter

- Important element: Transducer (inter-digital structure) with electrical field between the fingers $\Rightarrow$ contraction, extraction of piezo-material $\Rightarrow$ ignites wave.


## Surface Acoustic Wave Filters II

- With electrical pulse excitation a SAW-pulse $(\delta)$-pulse is generated. Multi fingers, thus have frequency response of

$$
H(f)=\sum_{n=1}^{N}(-1)^{n} \frac{w_{n}}{w_{0}} e^{-j 2 \pi f n p v}
$$

where: $n$ is number of finger, determining also polarity, $N$ total number, $w_{n} / w_{0}$ finger overlap (relative), $p$ periodicity and $v$ velocity of the wave.

- Total frequency response has shape of $\sin x / x$, center frequency $f_{0}=v /(2 p)$ and 4 dB bandwidth $B=2 f_{0} / B$


## SAW-Filters: Practical Issues

- Poor grounding (inductance to ground because of via holes) yields high cross talk $\rightarrow$ minimize inductance to ground, use multiple via holes
- Usage as IF-filters (almost everywhere) and RF-filters (2.5 GHz no problem), low power (typ. $<30 \mathrm{dBm}$ )
- Passband insertion loss $2 . .3 \mathrm{~dB}$, stop-band rejection typ. 30dB
- Matching (possible with LC) typically required to get to $50 \Omega$ check data-sheet for typical impedances!



## FBAR-Filter

Film Bulk Acoustic Resonators

High Q, low loss, sharp transitionGood power handlingNot ESD sensitiveRF integration possible (small, on silicon)CostlyOnly availble for huge markets/ volumes

## FBAR-Filter


(a) Transmission of Avago FBAR-filter ACPF-7500 (UMTS Band II Tx), (b) $S_{11}$ in Smith-Chart.

## Filter Design

Filter needed for

- RF-RX: RF selection (reject blockers, limit bandwidth, thus minimize noise bandwidth)
- RF-TX: Keep spectrum clean, do not disturb others! Shape spectrum.
- IF: Separate wanted and unwanted signal (e.g. LO rejection), reject image frequencies

Filter development

- Systematic approach to design frequency response
- Translate from prototype (low-pass) filters wanted shape (e.g. bandpass)
- Translate into physical structures. Here: transmission-lines


## Prototype-Filters

- Starting point: Power-Loss-Ratio $P_{L R}=\frac{1}{1-\rho^{2}}=\frac{1}{1-\Gamma \Gamma^{*}}$
- Express with well defined ratio of polynomials: $P_{L R}=1+\frac{M\left(\omega^{2}\right)}{N\left(\omega^{2}\right)}$
- Butterworth-filter for $N\left(\omega^{2}\right)=1$ and $M\left(\omega^{2}\right)=k^{2}\left(\omega / \omega_{c}\right)^{2 N}$
- Chebycheff-filter for $N\left(\omega^{2}\right)=1$ and $M\left(\omega^{2}\right)=k^{2} T_{N}^{2}\left(\omega / \omega_{c}\right)$ for Chebycheff-characteristic. $T_{N}$ : Chebycheff-Polynomial order $N$


Characteristics for Butterworth- (- - $)$
und Chebycheff-low-pass
(一) order 5

## Prototype Filter Characteristics


(a)

(b)

Rejection-characteristics for different order filters ripple $\rho_{\max }=1 \mathrm{~dB}$. (a) Butterworth, (b) Chebycheff.

- Chebycheff:
- Highest possible (polynomial) selection
- Ripples in pass-band
- Butterworth:
- Maximum flat in passband
- Fairly low rejection


## Filter Prototype Structure



Low-pass prototype, starting with cap.

Element Values: Butterworth

| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\kappa_{1}$ | 2 | 1.4142 | 1 | 0.7654 | 0.6180 | 0.5176 | 0.4450 |
| $\kappa_{2}$ | 1 | 1.4142 | 2 | 1.8478 | 1.6180 | 1.4142 | 1.2470 |
| $\kappa_{3}$ |  | 1 | 1 | 1.8478 | 2 | 1.9319 | 1.8019 |
| $\kappa_{4}$ |  |  | 1 | 0.7654 | 1.6180 | 1.9319 | 2 |
| $\kappa_{5}$ |  |  |  | 1 | 0.6180 | 1.4142 | 1.8019 |
| $\kappa_{6}$ |  |  |  |  | 1 | 0.5176 | 1.2470 |
| $\kappa_{7}$ |  |  |  |  |  | 1 | 0.4450 |
| $\kappa_{8}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  | 1 |

Prototype Elements for Butterworth filter

- All orders terminate in $1 \Rightarrow$ All orders lead to matched filter
- Elements calculated with $L_{k}=\frac{\kappa_{k} Z_{0}}{\omega}$ and $C_{k}=\frac{\kappa_{k}}{\omega Z_{0}}$
- $\omega$ is 3 dB corner frequency, $Z_{0}$ impedance level (here: $50 \Omega$ )


## Element Values: Chebycheff

| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\kappa_{1}$ | 1.018 | 1.822 | 2.024 | 2.099 | 2.135 | 2.155 | 2.166 |
| $\kappa_{2}$ | 1 | 0.685 | 0.994 | 1.064 | 1.091 | 1.104 | 1.112 |
| $\kappa_{3}$ |  | 2.660 | 2.024 | 2.831 | 3.001 | 3.063 | 3.093 |
| $\kappa_{4}$ |  |  | 1 | 0.789 | 1.091 | 1.152 | 1.174 |
| $\kappa_{5}$ |  |  |  | 2.660 | 2.135 | 2.937 | 3.093 |
| $\kappa_{6}$ |  |  |  |  | 1 | 0.810 | 1.112 |
| $\kappa_{7}$ |  |  |  |  |  | 2.660 | 2.166 |
| $\kappa_{8}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  | 1 |

Table of prototype values for Chebycheff low-pass with $\rho_{\max }=1 \mathrm{~dB}$

- Only odd orders terminate in 1 , thus only they can be matched to $50 \Omega$


## Recipe for Low-Pass-Filter

1. Select corner frequencies $\omega$, maximum loss (ripple) $\rho_{\text {max }}$ in pass-band, selectivity
2. Selection of maximum ripple determines which table (from elaborate literature) to use. Standard values for $\rho_{\text {max }}$ are usually tabulated
3. Selectivity requirements determine order. Evtl. use graphics for this
4. Take prototype (normalized) values $\kappa_{n}$
5. Carry values over to physical network with $L_{k}=\frac{\kappa_{k} Z_{0}}{\omega}$ and $C_{k}=\frac{\kappa_{k}}{\omega Z_{0}}$
6. If transmission line-design wanted, use formulae for short lines and calculate length $l_{L}=\frac{\lambda_{L}}{2 \pi} \arcsin \left(\omega C Z_{L}\right)$ for low impedance $\left({ }_{L}\right)$ and $l_{H}=\frac{\lambda_{H}}{2 \pi} \arcsin \left(\frac{\omega L}{Z_{H}}\right)$ for high impedance $\left(_{H}\right)$ section.

## Example: Low-Pass in Micro-strip Technology

Design requirements

- Butterworth, order $\geq 5$ (we will chose 7 )
- Low-pass up to 1 GHz , high rejection for $f \approx 10 \mathrm{GHz}$
- Design for $50 \Omega$ in microstrip-technology, on RT-Duroid 5880, $\epsilon_{r}=2.2, \mathrm{~h}=0.508 \mathrm{~mm}$
- Chose impedances (should be manufacturable, only supporting one mode and still as far apart as possible), $Z_{H}=120 \Omega, w_{H}=0.27 \mathrm{~mm} ; Z_{L}=15 \Omega, w_{L}=7.3 \mathrm{~mm}$
- Compensation done empirically (just scale length of lines)


## Element Parameters

| Element Parameters |  |  | Value |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $C_{1}$ | el. I <br> uncomp. | phys.I $/ \mathrm{mm}$ <br> comp. |  |
| $L_{1}$ | 9.9 nH | $7.7^{\circ}$ | 3.6 |
| $C_{2}$ | 5.7 pF | $33^{\circ}$ | 16.4 |
| $L_{2}$ | 16 nH | $56^{\circ}$ | 15.6 |
| $C_{3}$ | 5.7 pF | $33^{\circ}$ | 29.6 |
| $L_{3}$ | 9.9 nH | $31^{\circ}$ | 15.6 |
| $C_{4}$ | 1.4 pF | $7.7^{\circ}$ | 3.6 |

## Low-pass-Filter Layout



Micro-strip-layout of a Butterworth low-pass.

## Low-Pass-results



## Realization in Coax-Technology



Inner conductor (a) and dimension (b) with outer conductor 26 mm for coaxial low-pass-filter.

## Coax-Low-Pass-Filter (Results)


(a)

(b)

Simulation with effective ideal LC, TRL and Coax-TRL Models (a) and full wave simulation with CST (b).

## Modes in Coax-Filter



Field distribution (after CST) in coax-low-pass-filter at $0.5 \mathrm{GHz}(\mathrm{a}), 0.9 \mathrm{GHz}$ (b), and in stop-band at 1.8 GHz (c).

## Design of Distributed Band-Pass-Filter

- General approach is to transform prototype low-pass to band via a transformation function (for band-pass: $b(\omega)=\frac{\omega_{0}}{\Delta \omega}\left(\frac{\omega_{0}}{\omega}-\frac{\omega}{\omega_{0}}\right)$
- Bandpass with coupled line section design equations:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\omega_{0} & =\sqrt{\omega_{1} \omega_{2}} \\
\Theta_{1} & =\frac{\pi \omega_{1}}{2 \omega_{0}}, \\
P \sin \Theta_{1} & =\frac{K_{10}^{\prime}}{\sqrt{\frac{1}{2} \tan \Theta_{1}+K_{10}^{\prime 2}}}, \\
s & =\frac{1}{\frac{1}{2} \tan \Theta_{1}+K_{10}^{\prime 2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Design of Distributed Band-Pass-Filter

- Values for impedance normalized (to $Z_{c}$ ) impedance inverters:

$$
\begin{aligned}
K_{10}^{\prime} & =K_{n+1, n}^{\prime}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{\kappa_{0} \kappa_{1}}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{\kappa_{n} \kappa_{n+1}}} \\
K_{k, k+1}^{\prime} & =\frac{1}{\sqrt{\kappa_{k} \kappa_{k+1}}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

- Some values come to aid:

$$
\hat{N}_{k+1, k}=\sqrt{K_{k+1, k}^{\prime 2}+\frac{1}{4} \tan ^{2} \Theta_{1}}
$$

- And finally the even- and odd-mode impedances

$$
\begin{aligned}
Z_{e}^{1} & =Z_{e}^{n+1}=Z_{c}\left(1+P \sin \Theta_{1}\right) \\
Z_{o}^{1} & =Z_{o}^{n+1}=Z_{c}\left(1-P \sin \Theta_{1}\right) \\
Z_{e}^{k+1} & =Z_{e}^{n-k+1}=Z_{c} s\left(\hat{N}_{k+1, k}+K_{k+1, k}^{\prime}\right) \\
Z_{o}^{k+1} & =Z_{o}^{n-k+1}=Z_{c} s\left(\hat{N}_{k+1, k}-K_{k+1, k}^{\prime}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

## Design Results for Bandpass

Chebycheff, 1 dB equal-ripple filter, pass-band $11 \ldots 12 \mathrm{GHz}$, on $50 \Omega$-System, Order $N=7$ Impedances in $\Omega$, Symmetry $Z_{N-k}=Z_{k}$

| $Z_{e 1}$ | 62.0 | $Z_{o 1}$ | 37.9 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $Z_{e 2}$ | 51.3 | $Z_{o 2}$ | 43.2 |
| $Z_{e 3}$ | 50.6 | $Z_{o 3}$ | 43.8 |
| $Z_{e 4}$ | 50.5 | $Z_{o 4}$ | 43.9 |



Layout (schematically) of a bandpass filter in microstrip technology

## Bandpass Results I



Simulation for bandpass filter ( $N=7$ ) with ideal coupled transmission-lines (no end-effect, no real lines considered). Observe the number of ripples!

## Bandpass Results II



Simulation as above, observe the spurious pass-band at $3 f_{0}$, where the lines have an electrical length of $3 \lambda / 2$. No passband at length $\lambda$ !

## Another Chebycheff-Bandpass



Current distribution and geometry (a) with reflection (b) and transmission (c) after [1] for edge-coupled bandpass-filter. Substrate RF-Duroid5880 $\epsilon_{r}=2.2, d=0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$.

## Rectangular Waveguide BPF

| CST MICRowave Studio | $07 / 30 / 2012-11: 51$ |
| :--- | :--- |



Structure of H-Plane steps as bandpass filter in rectangular waveguide technology after [2]

## H-Plane-Filter-Results




S-Parameters for H-Plane-Waveguide-Filter

Field-Distribution in H-Plane-Filter


E-Field-Distribution in H-Plane-Filter (calculated with CST) in stop-band at 12.5 GHZ (a) and pass-band and $13.1 \mathrm{GHz}(\mathrm{b})$ and 13.25 GHz (c).

## What We Did And What We Did Not

You just experienced

- A brief walk through passive components, and how they are being used and treated in RF-engineering
- An introduction to components somewhat special to RF, such as couplers and dividers, SAWcomponents
- A primer on (analogue) filter design

We left out

- All ferri-magnetic components
- Circulator
- Director
- Anisotropies, also in magnetics and in dielectrics.


## References

[1] G. Oberschmidt. Waveletbasierte Simulationswerkzeuge für planare Mikrowellenschaltungen. Bd. 293. 9. Düsseldorf: VDI Fortschritt-Berichte, 1998.
[2] Jorge A. Ruiz-Cruz, Jose R. Montejo-Garai und Jesus M. Rebollar. Computer Aided Design of Waveguide Devices by Mode-Matching Methods. 10. Sep. 2012. URL: http://www.intechopen. com/books/passive-microwave-components-and-antennas/computer-aided-design-of-waveguide-devices-by-mode-matching-methods

## 10 Transistors: Technology, Performance

## Learnings

- Learn about different types of RF transistors
- Know, when to use which types
- know state of the art performance parameters
- Worry about non-idealism: Noise and compression (harmonics) and deal with it


## General

- Used (Semiconductor) material
- Silicon ( Si ) in Bipolar junction transistors, as far up (in frequency) as one can push it.
- III-V-Semiconductors ([Aluminum] Gallium Arsenide [AI]GaAs, Indium Phosphide InP) for high frequencies (because of high electron mobility in material) and more freedom in designing the junction (Hetero Bipolar Transistor)
- Silicon Germanium ( SiGe ) for higher frequencies (than Si ) because of higher electron mobility and as well good integrability with common Si-chips (digital)
- Bipolar Junction Transistor (NPN, PNP), Hetro Bipolar Junction Transistor (HBT)
- Field Effect Transistor (FET): Metal Semiconductor (Junction) FET (MESFET), Metal Oxide Semiconductor FET (MOSFET) well known from usual digital electronics, High Electron Mobility Transistor (HEMT) especially designed MESFET


## BJT Geometry



- Maximize highest possible frequency of oscillation (point where power gain is still one: $\omega_{\max }=$ $\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\omega_{\alpha}}{r_{b} c_{c}}}$ (for explanation of factors see next slides.)
- Mobility of electrons/ diffusion through base is given by material (more or less, see later HEMT)
- Make sure base zone is narrow
- Minimize $r_{b}$ through wide base-cross-section and small base-width
- Wide collector-junction for small capacitance $c_{c}$


## BJT: Field, Current and Structures



Field and current distribution for striped geometry


RF-Bipolar-transistor with (a) Inter-digital-, (b) Overlay- and (c) Mesh-geometry

## Bipolar Junction transistor (BJT)



Equivalent circuit of a bipolar junction transistor

| $C_{b p}$ | base bond pad cap. | $C_{e p}$ | emitter bond pad cap. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $R_{b c}$ | base contact res. | $R_{e c}$ | emitter contact res. |
| $R_{1}, R_{2}, R_{3}$ | base distributed res. | $C_{1}, C_{2}, C_{3}$ | collector-base distr. cap. |
| $R_{e}$ | dynamic e-b diode res. | $C_{e}$ | e-b diode junction cap. |
| $R_{c}$ | collector res. | $L_{b}, L_{e}$ | base \& emitter bond wire ind. |

## Values

Example values for a BJT Avantek AT60500 silicon bipolar transistor with $I_{c}=2 \mathrm{~mA}, U_{e c}=8 \mathrm{~V}$

$$
\begin{array}{|l|l|}
\hline C_{b p}+C_{3}=0.055 \mathrm{pF} & C_{1}=0.01 \mathrm{pF} \\
C_{2}=0.039 \mathrm{pF} & C_{e p}=0.26 \mathrm{pF} \\
C_{e}=0.75 \mathrm{pF} & R_{b c}+R_{3}=4.2 \Omega \\
R_{e c}=0.66 \Omega & R_{1}=7.5 \Omega \\
R_{2}=10.3 \Omega & R_{e}=12.9 \Omega \\
R_{c}=5 \Omega & L_{b}=0.5 \mathrm{nH} \\
L_{e}=0.2 \mathrm{nH} & \tau_{d}=6.9 \mathrm{ps} \\
\hline
\end{array}
$$

So we have a base cut-off frequency of $f_{b}=\frac{D_{n b}}{\pi d_{b}^{2}}=22.7 \mathrm{GHz}$. $D_{n b}$. Diffusion constant in the base, $d_{b}$ width of base.
Common base current gain $\alpha=\frac{\alpha_{0} e^{-j \omega \tau_{d}}}{1+j f / f_{b}}$ $\tau_{d}$ collector depletion region delay time.

## BJT: Usage in Common-Emitter Circuit

- Advantageous input and output impedance
- higher current-gain than in common-base
- short circuit gain $\alpha_{e}^{*}=\frac{\alpha^{*}}{1-\alpha^{*}}$ with effective $\alpha_{e f f}^{*} \quad \Rightarrow \alpha_{e}^{*} \approx \frac{\alpha \cdot e^{-j m \omega \tau_{b}}}{1-\alpha \cdot e^{-j m \omega \tau_{b}+j \frac{\omega}{\omega_{e c}}}}$
- Transit-frequency: $\left|\alpha_{e}^{*}\left(\omega_{T}\right)\right|=1$
- for LF-Transistor: $\omega_{T}=\omega_{\alpha}$
- for LF-Transistor: $\omega_{T}=\frac{\omega_{e c}}{1+m \omega_{e c} \tau_{b}} \quad(\alpha \approx 1)$


## HBT: Structure



Structure of a Hetero junction bipolar transistor

- vertical structure $\rightarrow$ less surface states as in planar structures (FET) $\rightarrow$ less $1 / \mathrm{f}$ - noise (important for non-linear applications as in oscillators. HBT comparable with Bipolar-Transistor, ca. 10 dB better than FET
- high power, because entire Emitter-cross-section is available.


## Hetero Bipolar Transistor (HBT)



- RF limit because of $r_{b}$ and $d_{b}$
- Contradiction: $d_{b}$ small for $\omega_{\alpha}$ large, $d_{b}$ large for $r_{b}$ small
- Solution: Bipolar-Transistor with Emitter-Basis-Hetero-Junction: E: n-AIGaAs, B: p-GaAs, C: n-GaAs
- large barrier $\mathrm{E}-\mathrm{B} \rightarrow$ holes of B cannot go to $\mathrm{E} \hookrightarrow \gamma \approx 1$
- Base-width $d_{b}$ very small $(<0,1 \mu m) \hookrightarrow \tau_{e c} \searrow, f_{T} \nearrow \rightarrow$ solve problem with $r_{b}$ large with high doping $N_{b} \quad\left(\sim 10^{19} \mathrm{~cm}^{-3}\right)$


## HBT: Results

- $f_{\max }=604 \mathrm{GHz}$ (2005, University of IIlinois at Urbana-Champaign)
- Material (for record: $\ln \mathrm{P}-\ln G a A s)$
- for mobile application material SiGe


Recent (2005/6) results for $\ln$ P DHBT,
after Rodwell e.a. "Frequency Limits of Bipolar Integrated Circuits", IEEE-MTT Symp. 2006, pp. 329

### 10.1 Field Effect Transistor

## Field Effect Transistor (FET)



Pictorial derivation of equivalent circuit for a MESFET

## FET: Equivalent Circuit



High frequency equivalent circuit of a FET Change compared to the static case:

- Channel conductance $g_{d}$ unchanged
- Voltage controlled current source: $S \rightarrow S^{*} \approx \frac{S}{1+j \omega \tau_{s}}$ for $\omega \tau_{s} \ll 1 \quad \tau_{s}$ : Channel drift or transit time
- Order of magnitude $\tau_{s} \approx \frac{l}{\bar{v}_{D}}, \bar{v}_{D}=\mu_{n} \frac{U_{D S}}{l} \tau_{s} \approx \frac{l}{v_{s}}$, if $E_{s}$ (Saturation in entire channel)


## The Additional RF-Elements I

- Gate-Source-Capacitance:

$$
C_{g s}=\varepsilon \cdot a \cdot \int_{0}^{l} \frac{d x}{w}
$$

$a$ - Gatewidth, $w$ - Junction thickness, $l$ - Gatelength

$$
C_{g s} \approx(2 \ldots 3) \cdot C_{0}, C_{0}=\frac{\varepsilon \cdot a \cdot l}{d} \text { Junctioncap for } w=d=\mathrm{const}
$$

- $r_{g}:$ Resistance of the Channel R-C-transmission-line $\rightarrow$ with $r_{g}, C_{g s}$ : time-delay (order of magnitude) $\tau_{g}=$ $\frac{\varepsilon}{\sigma} \cdot\left(\frac{l}{d}\right)^{2}$
- Gate-Drain:
$C_{g d}$ : parasitic cap at edge of Gate

$$
C_{g d} \approx \varepsilon \cdot a \text { for } \varepsilon_{r}=12: \frac{C_{g d}}{a}=\frac{1 p F}{c m}
$$

Outer elements: Line- and Connector-resistances, caps.

## The Additional RF-Elements II

- Source-Resistor: $R_{s}$ conductor resistor between Source and Channel
$R_{s}$ Voltage divider for input voltage $\rightarrow$ limits voltage control and generated feedback
$R_{s}$ small $\rightarrow$ S - contact close to channel.
- Gate - Resistance
$R_{g}$ : Specific resistance of Gate-contact is high
E.g. $: R_{g}^{\prime}=10 \mathrm{k} \Omega / \mathrm{cm}$

Gate-contact narrow: limits electrolytic gain.
Gate-contact acts like transmission line with $R_{g}^{\prime}, C_{g}^{\prime}$ and length $a\left(G^{\prime}, L^{\prime} \approx 0\right)$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \rightarrow \text { characteristic impedance: } Z_{g}=\sqrt{\frac{R_{g}^{\prime}}{j \omega C_{g}^{\prime}}} \\
& \rightarrow \text { propagation coefficient: } \gamma=\sqrt{j \omega C_{g}^{\prime} \cdot R_{g}^{\prime}}
\end{aligned}
$$

## The Additional RF-Elements III

- Gate - Resistance (continued)

Input resistance for open (no current in Gate): $Z_{E}=Z_{g} \cdot \operatorname{coth}(\gamma \cdot a)$

$$
\begin{gathered}
\text { for }|\gamma \cdot a| \ll 1 \rightarrow \operatorname{coth} x \approx 1 / x+x / 3 \rightarrow Z_{E} \approx \frac{1}{j \omega C_{g}^{\prime} \cdot a}+\frac{R_{g}^{\prime} \cdot a}{3} \\
R_{g}=\operatorname{Re}\left\{Z_{E}\right\}=\frac{R_{g}^{\prime} \cdot a}{3}
\end{gathered}
$$

Input voltage is divided like $\operatorname{Re}\left\{Z_{E}\right\} / \operatorname{Im}\left\{Z_{E}\right\}$ between $R_{g}$ and inner FET $\hookrightarrow$ division like $\sim a^{2} \Rightarrow$ Gate-length short $\rightarrow$ more Gate-contacts in parallel.
E.g.: Two Gate-contacts in parallel

$$
\hookrightarrow R_{g}=\frac{R_{g}^{\prime} \cdot a}{12} \approx 30 \Omega \quad \text { a: total Gate-length }
$$

with $a / 2=200 \mu \mathrm{~m}$

## The Additional RF-Elements IV

- Parasitic caps of Gate and Drain, of lines and contacts: $C_{G}, C_{D}$
E.g.: GaAs-FET, I $=1 \mu \mathrm{~m}, \mathrm{a}=300 \mu \mathrm{~m}$

$$
\begin{array}{llll}
\mathrm{S}=30 \mathrm{mS} & C_{g s}=0,4 \mathrm{pF} & r_{g}=3 \Omega & R_{g}=2 \Omega \\
g_{d}=2 \mathrm{mS} & C_{g d}=0,01 \mathrm{pF} & \tau_{s}=3 \mathrm{ps} & R_{s}=5 \Omega
\end{array}
$$



High frequency equivalent circuit of a FET (repeated)

## FET: Frequency Limits


(Much) simplified equivalent circuit for FET

- Drift-delay and -loss:

$$
\left|S^{*}\right|=\frac{S}{\sqrt{2}} \quad \text { with } \omega_{s}=\frac{1}{\tau_{s}}
$$

- Transit-frequency and short-circuit current gain $\alpha_{S C}$ :

$$
\alpha_{S C}=\left.\frac{i_{2}}{i_{1}}\right|_{U_{2}=0}=\frac{S}{j \omega C_{g s}}
$$

## FET: Frequency Limits II

- Transit-frequency (continued)

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left|\alpha_{S C}\right|=1 \text { at } f=f_{T}=\frac{1}{2 \pi} \cdot \frac{S}{C_{g s}} \\
\omega_{T}=2 \pi f_{T}=\frac{S}{C_{g s}}=\frac{S}{g_{d}} \cdot \frac{g_{d}}{C_{g s}}=\mu \cdot B
\end{gathered}
$$

- $\mu$ : Open-circuit voltage gain, $B$ : Bandwidth.

With $\quad \omega_{T 0}=2 \pi f_{T 0}=2 \cdot U_{p} \cdot \frac{\mu_{n}}{l^{2}} \quad$ with $\quad U_{p}:$ Pinchoff-Voltage, $\mu_{n}$ : mobility

## FET: Frequency Limits III

- and $S, C_{g s}$ from more accurate physical model

I bzw. $U_{s}$ large: $\hookrightarrow f_{T} \sim l^{-2}$
I bzw. $U_{s}$ small: $\hookrightarrow f_{T} \sim l^{-1}$


### 10.2 High Electron Mobility Transistor

High Electron Mobility Transistor (HEMT)


Heterostructure and energy levels (bands) in a HEMT

- At hetero-junction electrons diffuse from n -doped AIGaAs-layer to un-doted GaAs-layer.
$\rightarrow$ very good RF-properties because of much decreased scattering (less donators) ( $\mu \uparrow, v_{s} \uparrow$ )
- Application:
- Amplifiers for $\mu / \mathrm{mm}$ Waves (low-noise, power)
- fast logic circuits
- eq. circuit like MESFET, transit-frequency $f_{T}=\frac{S}{2 \pi C_{g s}}$ with higher $\mu, v_{s}: f_{T} \uparrow$


## HEMT: Technology I



Usual HEMT, and Pseudomorphic HEMT (P-HEMT)

- "Mushroom"-Gate for $R_{g} \downarrow$
- P-HEMT
- AIGaAs/InGaAs-Hetero-junction
- $\Rightarrow$ - better e-transport properties - Energy-gap $\Delta W_{L}$ larger (more elctrons)
- Lattice-constant of $\operatorname{InGaAs} \neq$ AIGaAs, GaAs, its mismatch growth with In-ratio (1,5\% for 22\% In-portion) $\Rightarrow \operatorname{InGaAs-layer}$ so thin, that voltages from neighboring layers can be taken (e.g.: 125Å)


## HEMT: Technology II



P-HEMT with double-hetero-junction and HEMT on InP Some Performance figures (independent of technology)

- GaAs-FET: $F_{\min } \simeq 1 \mathrm{~dB}$ at $10 \mathrm{GHz} ; \leq 2 \mathrm{~dB}$ at $20 \mathrm{GHz} ; \leq 4 \mathrm{~dB}$ at 60 GHz
- GaAs-HEMT: (Gatelength $l=0,25 \mu \mathrm{~m}) F_{\min } \leq 2 \mathrm{~dB}$ bei 60 GHz as P-HEMT: $f_{T} \simeq 170 \mathrm{GHz} \quad f_{u, \max } \simeq$ 350 GHz
- InP-HEMT: $(l=0,2 \mu \mathrm{~m}) F_{\text {min }} \simeq 0.8 \mathrm{~dB}$ at 64 GHz at $G=8.7 \mathrm{~dB}$


## References

## 11 Amplifier: Linear and Design with S-Parameters

## What you Should Know after this Session

- Know what people can mean, when they talk about gain
- Know the basic design fundamentals
- Know that there are trade-offs between stability, gain, noise, efficiency, linearity and maybe more
- Use S-Parameter data file of a transistor
- Do the matching (Again: That's what it's all about...)


## Amplifier Design: Some Goals

Some CONCURRENT design goals for amplifiers

1. High (maximum) power gain with fair (low) DC power-consumption and with fair linearity
2. Low (minimum) noise in the first stage of a pre-amplifier
3. Stability (an absolute must, otherwise amplifier is unusable)
4. Low (minimum) input- and output-reflection
5. Adequate and uniform gain in desired band
6. Linear phase throughout the band (only group delay)
7. In-sensitive to drift in S-parameters (e.g. temperature)
and many more

## Structure of an Amplifier



The amplifier in three parts: Input matching, amp, output matching Amplifier design is

- Determine transistor and bias-point to be used (S-Parameters)
- Develop the needed matching networks to it


## S-Parameters: A Practical Convention



Defining waves at two-port
Measurement of the waves $a_{i}, b_{i}$ instead of $U_{i}, I_{i}$

$$
\binom{\underline{b}_{1}}{\underline{b}_{2}}=\underbrace{\left(\begin{array}{ll}
S_{11} & S_{12} \\
S_{21} & S_{22}
\end{array}\right)}_{\text {scattering matrix }} \cdot\binom{\underline{a}_{1}}{\underline{a}_{2}} \text {, short }[b]=[S] \cdot[a]
$$

Scattering Matrix and Scattering Parameter $S_{i, j}$

## Physical Meaning

The physical meaning and a hint form measuring the S-Parameters

$$
\begin{aligned}
& S_{11}=\left.\frac{b_{1}}{a_{1}}\right|_{a_{2}=0}: \quad \text { Input-reflection for matched output } \\
& S_{22}=\left.\frac{b_{2}}{a_{2}}\right|_{a_{1}=0}: \text { Output-reflection for matched input } \\
& S_{21}=\left.\frac{b_{2}}{a_{1}}\right|_{a_{2}=0}: \quad \text { Transmission factor from input to output } \\
& \quad \begin{array}{l}
\text { with matched output }
\end{array} \\
& S_{12}=\left.\frac{b_{1}}{a_{2}}\right|_{a_{1}=0}: \quad \text { Transmission factor from output to input } \\
& \quad \text { for matched input }
\end{aligned}
$$

### 11.1 Stability

## First of All: Stability

Very simple: An amplifier must be stable at all frequencies (not only in desired bad!) otherwise it is no amplifier.

- Active elements (i.e. transistors) can feed back, at least internally there is feedback, almost always
- With the internal amplification this feedback can lead to oscillation

Stability criteria, stability can be assessed by S-Parameters of the active device (transistor)

1. Absolute stability: stable for all (passive) generators $Z_{G}$ and loads $Z_{L}$
2. Conditionally stable: only stable for some $Z_{G}$ and $Z_{L}$ and combinations thereof. Make sure your device operates only (and at all frequencies) only in the stable area.

## Stability in Pictures



Definition of variables (in-output-reflection)

- Input reflection $\Gamma_{i n}=\frac{b_{1}}{a_{1}}=S_{11}+\frac{S_{21} S_{12} \Gamma_{L}}{1-S_{22} \Gamma_{L}}$
- Output reflection $\Gamma_{o u t}=\frac{b_{2}}{a_{2}}=S_{22}+\frac{S_{21} S_{12} \Gamma_{G}}{1-S_{11} \Gamma_{G}}$
- Stability is given if $\left|\Gamma_{\text {in }}\right|<1,\left|\Gamma_{\text {out }}\right|<1$
- Thus for $\Gamma_{L}$ this means $\left|S_{11}+\frac{S_{21} S_{12} \Gamma_{L}}{1-S_{22} \Gamma_{L}}\right|<1$


## Stability Circle

- Afore mentioned condition means that all $\Gamma_{L}$ that just barely fulfill the condition of stability lie on a circle in the reflection plane (Smith-diagram)
- Center is $M_{L}=\frac{\left(S_{22}-S_{11}^{*} \Delta\right)^{*}}{\left|S_{22}\right|^{2}-|\Delta|^{2}}, \quad \Delta=S_{11} S_{22}-S_{12} S_{21}$
- Radius is $\rho_{L}=\left|\frac{S_{21} S_{12}}{\left|S_{22}\right|^{2}-|\Delta|^{2}}\right|$


## Stability Circle: Graphically



Different cases of stability circles. (Region designation valid for $\left|S_{11}\right|<1$ ). $\left|r_{L}\right|=1$ denotes all possible passive loads.

1. Stable outside circle, and circle intersects Smith diagram for $\Gamma_{L}$ : Conditionally stable
2. Stable inside circle, and circle intersects Smith diagram for $\Gamma_{L}$ : Conditionally stable
3. Stable outside circle, and circle does not intersect Smith diagram for $\Gamma_{L}$ : Unconditionally stable
4. Stable inside circle, and circle surrounds Smith diagram for $\Gamma_{L}$ : Unconditionally stable

## Stability Criterion

Stability can be put together in only one factor:
The stability criterion

$$
K=\frac{1-\left|S_{11}\right|^{2}-\left|S_{22}\right|^{2}+|\Delta|^{2}}{2\left|S_{12} S_{21}\right|}>1
$$

- If $K>1$ the device is unconditionally stable (for the S-Parameters i.e. frequency and biasing given)
- If not, the device is conditionally stable, this means you need to find the load and generator impedance that leads to a stable operation
- The closer to zero, the more difficult it is to get a device stable.


### 11.2 Power Gain

## The Definition of Power-Gain



Power is easy to measure, but there are several definitions for gain, most of that originate from that fact that people not only ask: What is it you have?, but also ask,: What would be if we had only...?

| Power-Gain | $G_{P}=\frac{\text { Power at Load }}{\text { Input Power to Amp. }}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Transducer Gain | $G=\frac{\text { Power at Load }}{\text { Available Power of Source }}$ |

Available (Power) Gain $\quad G_{v}=\frac{\text { Available Power at Load }}{\text { Available Power of Source }}$

## Derivation of Power-Gains



Just to keep in mind the definitions.
Normalized load-/generator impedances/reflections $\Gamma_{L}=\frac{Z_{L}-Z_{0}}{Z_{L}+Z_{0}} ; \quad \Gamma_{s}=\frac{Z_{S}-Z_{0}}{Z_{S}+Z_{0}}$
And now $\binom{b_{1}}{b_{2}}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}S_{11} & S_{12} \\ S_{21} & S_{22}\end{array}\right)\binom{a_{1}}{a_{2}}$ and $\begin{gathered}a_{1}=\Gamma_{S} b_{1}+a_{S} \\ a_{2}=\Gamma_{L} b_{2}\end{gathered}$
And so we have

$$
b_{2}=S_{21} a_{1}+S_{22} \Gamma_{L} b_{2} \Leftrightarrow b_{2}=\frac{S_{21} a_{1}}{1-S_{22} \Gamma_{L}}
$$

and finally $\frac{b_{1}}{a_{1}}=\Gamma_{i n}=\frac{S_{11}-\Delta \Gamma_{L}}{1-S_{22} \Gamma_{L}} \quad \Delta=\operatorname{det} \overline{\bar{S}}, \frac{b_{2}}{a_{2}}=\Gamma_{\text {out }}=\frac{S_{22}-\Delta \Gamma_{S}}{1-S_{11} \Gamma_{S}}$

## Input Conditions

It all depends on how much power we get into this thing


- Power at input is difference between forward and backward travelling wave: $P_{\text {in }}=\left|a_{1}\right|^{2}-\left|b_{1}\right|^{2}=$ $\left|a_{1}\right|^{2}\left(1-\left|\Gamma_{i n}\right|^{2}\right)$
- Power at output is similar (but other way around) $P_{L}=\left|b_{2}\right|^{2}-\left|a_{2}\right|^{2}=\left|b_{2}\right|^{2}\left(1-\left|\Gamma_{L}\right|^{2}\right)$


## Power at the Output Port



Signal-flow-graph to depict conditions at the output port

- Outward travelling wave is $b_{2}=a_{1} \frac{S_{21}}{1-S_{22} \Gamma_{L}}$

And so the power is

$$
P_{L}=\left|a_{1}\right|^{2} \frac{\left(1-\left|\Gamma_{L}\right|^{2}\right)\left|S_{21}\right|^{2}}{\left|1-\Gamma_{L} S_{22}\right|^{2}}
$$

And consequently the Power Gain, which is, what the amplifier really does, it does not show how much the situation actually is improved by the amp

$$
G_{p}=\frac{P_{L}}{P_{i n}}=\frac{\left(1-\left|\Gamma_{L}\right|^{2}\right)\left|S_{21}\right|^{2}}{\left|1-\Gamma_{L} S_{22}\right|^{2}\left(1-\left|\Gamma_{i n}\right|^{2}\right)} .
$$

## How Much Better is it with Amp?

If you do bad at the input of the amp, what happens? The amp has to gain much, but compared to no-amp, the situation is not improved much. Thus, compare to best possible solution without amp, i.e. Transducer Gain


- Power at input of amp is $a_{1}=\frac{a_{S}}{1-\Gamma_{S} \Gamma_{i n}}$
- Available power is for $\Gamma_{i n}=\Gamma_{S}^{*}$ and is $P_{a v a}=\left|a_{1}\right|^{2}-\left|b_{1}\right|^{2}=\left|a_{S}\right|^{2} \frac{1}{1-\left|\Gamma_{S}\right|^{2}}$
- And so the input power (in terms of available power) is $P_{i n}=P_{a v a} \frac{\left(1-\left|\Gamma_{i n}\right|^{2}\right)\left(1-\left|\Gamma_{S}\right|^{2}\right)}{\left|1-\Gamma_{S} \Gamma_{i n}\right|^{2}}$


## Gain - Almost Done



The amplifier in three parts: Input matching, amp, output matching

$$
G=\frac{P_{L}}{P_{a v a}}=\frac{\left(1-\left|\Gamma_{L}\right|^{2}\right)\left(1-\left|\Gamma_{S}\right|^{2}\right)\left|S_{21}\right|^{2}}{\left|1-\Gamma_{L} S_{22}\right|^{2}\left|1-\Gamma_{i n} \Gamma_{S}\right|^{2}}
$$

That is difficult, because there is a $\Gamma_{i n}$ in there. So we just set $S_{12} \approx 0$, which is mostly almost true and then $\Gamma_{i n} \approx S_{11}$ and so Transducer Gain

$$
G^{\prime}=\frac{\left(1-\left|\Gamma_{S}\right|^{2}\right)}{\left|1-S_{11} \Gamma_{S}\right|^{2}}\left|S_{21}\right|^{2} \frac{\left(1-\left|\Gamma_{L}\right|^{2}\right)}{\left|1-\Gamma_{L} S_{22}\right|^{2}}
$$

## Gain - Final Slide (really)

And here is, what we get at most for an unconditionally stable out of the (poor) transistor

$$
G_{\max }=\left|\frac{S_{21}}{S_{12}}\right|\left(K \pm \sqrt{K^{2}-1}\right)
$$

- The --sign is the one valid for passive loading.
- Ratio $\left|\frac{S_{21}}{S_{12}}\right|$ is also called the "figure of merit" and gives the maximum stable gain (i.e. $K=1$ )


### 11.3 Low Noise Amplifier

## Design of a Low Noise Amplifier

Tools and Goal

- Smith-Diagram (SD) and Constant Gain and Noise Circles
- Low noise with fair matching at input and output
- Stability

How to

1. Select transistor (use knowledge from earlier chapters)
2. Draw instable sections in SD, so that you know what to avoid
3. Construct input matching circuit, to match $\Gamma_{o p t}$ as point for optimum noise figure
4. Construct output matching to match to $\Gamma_{L}^{*}$
5. If required find compromises by using circles in SD

## Matching in Circles (Teaser)



Legende:
(1) $\Gamma_{\text {in }}{ }^{\prime}\left(F_{m}+0.5 \mathrm{~dB}\right)$
(2) $\Gamma_{\text {in }}{ }^{n}\left(F_{m}+1 d B\right)$
(3) $\Gamma_{\text {in }}{ }^{\prime}\left(G_{p}=10 \mathrm{~dB}\right)$
(4) $\Gamma_{L}\left(G_{p}=10 \mathrm{~dB}\right)$

Impedances that lead to the same noise-figure or gain can be drawn as circles in the Smith-Diagram

- Advanced technique to find compromises between gain, match and noise
- Support by design Software, as e.g. by Ansoft
- Caveat: For power amps these circles degenerate to ovals (no analytical description available)


## The Matching Network



Example for a matching network... and its representation in the Smith-chart:


## Bias Network

What for?

- The S-Parameters from data-sheet describe the linear performance of a transistor at clearly specified biasing conditions (working point)
- DC power must be applied to bring the transistor to its desired (linear) performance condition

How?

- Biasing networks shall present no loss to the DC power and
- shall be invisible to the RF (i.e. Matching at load and generator side must not be disturbed)
- RF-chokes possible (beware of resonance frequency of those things at few 100 MHz )
- Use (narrow-band) band-stop filter, (i.e. $\frac{\lambda}{4}$-transmission lines, that transform shorts (DC-connection with capacitive RF-grounding) to open at "hot-wire")


## Two Practical Biasing-Networks



Simple Biasing-nw with $\lambda / 4$-Stubs


Radial stub used to RF-shorten a line

## Complete Layout of the RF-LNA



Note:

- Double stubs an lines for matching
- $\lambda / 4$-transformation and radial RF-shorts for biasing
- Multiple vias for proper grounding of FET-sources


## References

## 12 Noise and Stochastic Processes

### 12.1 Noise Basics

## At First: The Result

Thermal noise

(Available) Noise-power of a (matched) resistor pair

- $N=k \cdot T \cdot B$
- $k=1.38 \cdot 10^{-23} \mathrm{Ws} / \mathrm{K}, T=290, B=$ Bandwidth
- $\operatorname{Or} N=-174 \mathrm{dBm}+10 \log B / \mathrm{Hz}$
- Available voltage $\sqrt{\overline{u^{2}}}=\sqrt{4 k T B R}$


## Noise and Stochastic Processes

Noise is a stochastic process, the time dependence is arbitrary. No meaningful description in time-domain is available or of interest.
Thus noise is described with statistical methods:

- Time dependent (voltage) function $u(t)$
- Probability density function (short: pdf), its integral must equal $100 \%$ (that's a definition)

$$
\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \rho(y) d y=1
$$

- $\rho(y) d y$ is the probability that the amplitude is in the range of $y$ to $y+d y$.


## Random Data (Pictorial)



Random amplitude distribution for normal distribution with mean 0 and standard deviation 1 . Note that values above 2 or below -2 are not uncommon!

## Normal (Gaussian) Distribution

- For distribution of electrical noise a description with normal- or gaussian distribution is close to reality and mathematically convenient.
- Gaussian density function is

$$
\rho(y)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi} \sigma} e^{\frac{-(y-\mu)^{2}}{2 \sigma^{2}}}
$$

$\mu$ Average or mean(value), $\sigma^{2}$ : Variance, $\sigma$ : Standard deviation

- If $(y-\mu)=\sigma$, then the pdf is down to $\frac{1}{\sqrt{e}} \approx 60 \%$
- $68 \%$ of all occurrences $y$ are between $\pm \sigma 95 \%$ of all occurrences $y$ are between $\pm 2 \sigma \quad 99.7 \%$ of all occurrences $y$ are between $\pm 3 \sigma$
- Careful: This is the amplitude distribution, not the spectrum or function in time


## Normal (Gaussian) Distribution (Pictorial)



Representation of Gaussian Probability Function with different standard deviations $\sigma=0.5 ; 1 ; 2$.

## Mean, Variance, and Momentums

- Practically even the pdf is almost unusable
- More simplification (with loss of details) is required:

1. Average:

$$
\mu=\overline{y(t)}=\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2 T} \int_{-T}^{T} y(t) d t
$$

for electrical (stochastic) process this will vanish to 0 .
2. Now, use quadratic average. If stoch. value $y$ is the voltage, then the quadratic mean is proportional to the power.

$$
\overline{y^{2}(t)}=\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} y^{2}(t) d t
$$

## Physics of Noise

Different physical phenomena will lead to noise:

- Thermal Noise (e.g. resistors, radiation from hot bodies (black bodies)) Happens each and everywhere, in electronics resistive elements are the main source for this.
- Noise from discrete nature of matter (waterfall, electrons at a potential barrier, avalanches) This is particularly important for semiconductors
- Cosmic noise (actually originating from the big bang)

These are essentially noiseless

- Ideal transmission lines, capacitors, inductors


### 12.2 Thermal Noise

## Thermal Noise of a Resistor



- Experiments and theory show that the equivalent noise power of a resistor is $N=k T B . k=$ $1.38 \cdot 10^{-23} \mathrm{Ws} / \mathrm{K}$ Boltzman's constant, $B$ bandwidth, $T(=300 \mathrm{~K})$ temperature. This is valid for moderately low frequency $h f \ll k T$ ( $h=6.626 \cdot 10^{-34}$ Js Planck's quantum constant)
- Noise voltage source is now characterized by its mean squares $\sqrt{\overline{u^{2}}}=2 \sqrt{k T R B}=2 \sqrt{N R}$.
- Or the like the current source $\sqrt{\overline{i^{2}}}=2 \sqrt{k T G B}$. with $G=1 / R$.

Overview of Noise Power and Voltage

| Comment | $R / \Omega$ | $T / K$ | $B$ | $N / W$ | $N / d B m$ | $\sqrt{\overline{u^{2}}}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Cool | 50 | 70 | 1 Hz | $9.7 \cdot 10^{-22}$ | -180 | 0.44 nV |
| Normal | 50 | 300 | 1 Hz | $4.1 \cdot 10^{-21}$ | -174 | 0.9 nV |
| Video | 75 | 300 | 1 Hz | $4.1 \cdot 10^{-21}$ | -174 | 1.1 nV |
| Narrow | 50 | 300 | 1 kHz | $4.1 \cdot 10^{-18}$ | -144 | 28 nV |
| Medium | 50 | 300 | 1 MHz | $4.1 \cdot 10^{-15}$ | -114 | 900 nV |
| Broad | 50 | 300 | 1 GHz | $4.1 \cdot 10^{-12}$ | -84 | $28 \mu \mathrm{~V}$ |
| Res. | 1 M | 300 | 1 MHz | $4.1 \cdot 10^{-15}$ | -114 | 0.13 mV |

Examples for noise sources under some example conditions.

## Signal to Noise Ratio

Calculating Signal to Noise Ratio

$$
\begin{gathered}
U_{S i n}=U_{S} \frac{Z_{i n}}{Z_{i n}+Z_{1}} \\
I_{S i n}=U_{S} \frac{1}{Z_{i n}+Z_{1}}
\end{gathered}
$$


$S=\operatorname{Re}\left\{U_{\text {Sin }} I_{\text {Sin }}^{*}\right\}=\left|U_{S}\right|^{2} \frac{\operatorname{Re}\left\{Z_{\text {in }}\right\}}{\left|Z_{1}+Z_{\text {in }}\right|^{2}}$
with power $N=\overline{U_{1}^{2}} \frac{\operatorname{Re}\left\{Z_{i n}\right\}}{\left|Z_{1}+Z_{i n}\right|^{2}}$
The Signal to Noise Ratio (SNR) is
$\frac{S}{N}=\frac{\left|U_{S}\right|^{2}}{U_{1}^{2}}=\frac{\left|U_{S}\right|^{2}}{4 k T B R e\left\{Z_{1}\right\}}$
the smaller the noise resistor, the better!

## Connecting Noisy Sources



How to

- For uncorrelated noise sources calculate voltages and currents of each individual source (superposition principle). when done add up the power (never the voltages itself) and thus get the resulting power of the desired position.
- For correlated source work as above, and additionally exploit correlation between sources

$$
\frac{S}{N}=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{2 U^{2}}{8 k T B R}, \omega_{1} \neq \omega_{2} \\
\frac{4 U^{2}}{8 k T B R}, \omega_{1}=\omega_{2}
\end{array}\right.
$$

## Connecting Noisy Sources

Derivation:

- Assume in general the sources are independent and assume for simplicity impedances are real and $R=R_{1}=R_{2}$. In time-domain we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
u_{L 1}(t) & =u_{1}(t) \frac{R \| R_{L}}{R+R \| R_{L}} \\
& =u_{1}(t) \frac{R_{L}}{R+2 R_{L}} \quad \text { und } \\
u_{L 2}(t) & =u_{2}(t) \frac{R_{L}}{R+2 R_{L}}
\end{aligned}
$$

- for harmonic oscillation we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& u_{1}(t)=\sqrt{2} U_{1} \cos \left(\omega_{1} t\right) \\
& u_{2}(t)=\sqrt{2} U_{2} \cos \left(\omega_{2} t\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

## Connecting Noisy Sources

continued derivation

- Power:

$$
\begin{aligned}
S= & \overline{\left(u_{1}(t)+u_{2}(t)\right)^{2}} \frac{R_{L}}{\left(R+2 R_{L}\right)^{2}} \\
= & 2 \overline{\left(U_{1} \cos \left(\omega_{1} t\right)+U_{2} \cos \left(\omega_{2} t\right)\right)^{2}} \frac{R_{L}}{\left(R+2 R_{L}\right)^{2}} \\
= & 2 \overline{U_{1}^{2} \cos ^{2}\left(\omega_{1} t\right)+U_{2}^{2} \cos ^{2}\left(\omega_{2} t\right)+2 U_{1} U_{2} \cos \left(\omega_{1} t\right) \cos \left(\omega_{2} t\right)} . \\
& \cdot \frac{R_{L}}{\left(R+2 R_{L}\right)^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

- Power (average) for harmonic oscillations

$$
\overline{u^{2}(t)}=\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2 T} \int_{-T}^{T} u^{2}(t) d t
$$

## Connecting Noisy Sources

continued...

- Trigonometric addition theorems:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\cos \left(\omega_{1} t\right) \cos \left(\omega_{2} t\right) & =\frac{1}{2} \cos \left(\left(\omega_{1}-\omega_{2}\right) t\right)+\frac{1}{2} \cos \left(\left(\omega_{1}+\omega_{2}\right) t\right) \\
\int \cos (\omega t) d t & =\frac{1}{\omega} \sin (\omega t) \\
\int \cos ^{2}(\omega t) d t & =\frac{1}{2} t+\frac{1}{4 \omega} \sin (\omega t) \\
\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \sin (\omega T) & =0
\end{aligned}
$$

## Connecting Noisy Sources

continued...

$$
S=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\left(U_{1}^{2}+U_{2}^{2}\right) \frac{R_{L}}{\left(R+2 R_{L}\right)^{2}}, \omega_{1} \neq \omega_{2} \\
\left(U_{1}^{2}+U_{2}^{2}+2 U_{1} U_{2}\right) \frac{R_{L}}{\left(R+2 R_{L}\right)^{2}}, \omega_{1}=\omega_{2}
\end{array}\right.
$$

- For noise source we have in analogy (superposition principle)

$$
\begin{aligned}
u_{L n 1}(t) & =u_{n 1}(t) \frac{R_{L}}{\left(R+2 R_{L}\right)^{2}} \\
u_{L n 2}(t) & =u_{n 2}(t) \frac{R_{L}}{\left(R+2 R_{L}\right)^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

- And thus the noise power

$$
\begin{aligned}
N & =\overline{\overline{\left(u_{L n 1}(t)+u_{L n 2}(t)\right)^{2}} / R_{L}} \\
& =\overline{\left(u_{L n 1}^{2}(t)+u_{L n 2}^{2}(t)+2 u_{L n 1}(t) u_{L n 2}(t)\right)^{2}} / R_{L}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Connecting Noisy Sources

continued ...

- And now again: Average, and consider the noise sources as being statistically independent (uncorrelated)

$$
\begin{aligned}
N & =\left(\overline{{\sqrt{{\overline{U_{L R 1}^{2}}}^{2}}}^{2}}+\overline{\left.\sqrt{{\overline{U_{L R 2}^{2}}}^{2}}\right) / R_{L} .}\right. \\
N & =\left(\overline{\bar{U}_{L R 1}^{2}}+\overline{U_{L R 2}^{2}}\right) / R_{L} \\
& =\left(\overline{U_{R 1}^{2}}+\overline{U_{R 2}^{2}}\right) \frac{R_{L}}{\left(R+2 R_{L}\right)^{2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

- And the Signal-to-Noise-Ratio is

$$
\frac{S}{N}=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{\left(U_{1}^{2}+U_{2}^{2}\right)}{U_{1}^{2}+\overline{U_{R 2}^{2}}}, \omega_{1} \neq \omega_{2} \\
\frac{\left(U_{1}^{2}+U_{2}^{2}+2 U_{1} U_{2}\right)}{U_{R 1}^{2}+\overline{U_{R 2}^{2}}}, \omega_{1}=\omega_{2}
\end{array}\right.
$$

## Connecting Noisy Sources

```
continued ...
```

- Now, for equal voltages $U_{1}=U_{2}=U$ and using $\overline{U_{R 1}^{2}}=4 k T B R$ for all noise sources we gain

$$
\frac{S}{N}=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{2 U^{2}}{8 k T B R}, \omega_{1} \neq \omega_{2} \\
\frac{4 U^{2}}{8 k T B R}, \omega_{1}=\omega_{2}
\end{array}\right.
$$

## More than Thermal Noise

## Shot-Noise

- Normal conductor: Energy-transport through electric and magnetic field
- Semiconductor (PN-Junction): Electrons and holes $\Rightarrow$ discrete nature!
- Because of discrete nature there are current impulses (shots), the spectrum is accordingly like $(\sin (x) / x)$
- On average the shot-noise current is $\overline{I_{S N}^{2}}=2 q I B, q=1.62 \cdot 10^{-19} \mathrm{As}, B$ is the band-width



## 1/f-Noise

Flicker Noise


- Not fully (physically) understood, named after spectral behavior $(1 / f)$
- $\overline{i_{n}^{2}}=k_{F} \frac{I^{A F}}{f} B$ with $k_{F}$ "Flicker Noise Coefficient" and $A F$ "Flicker Noise Exponent" determined from experiment
- Important: Corner frequency $f_{c}$. Bipolar Transistor about 10 kHz, Ga As-FET up to some 100 MHz $\Rightarrow$ FETs bad for oscillator applications, where low frequency components mixed into phase noise.


## Noise of an Antenna


(a) Antenna surrounded by black radiator and (b) Antenna noise after Meinke, Grundlach H17, (A,B) atmospheric (max,min), (C1,C2) industrial (rural, urban), D galactic, E calm sun, F noise of $O_{2}$ and $H_{2}$, with $0^{\circ}$ and $90^{\circ}$ elevation, G radiation of cosmic background, 2.7 K .

## Noise of an Antenna

- Man made noise (spark in cars, telephony...)
- Atmospheric noise, mainly from lightnings
- Cosmic noise from deep space
- Thermal noise from atmosphere $\left(\mathrm{O}_{2}, \mathrm{H}_{2}\right)$
- Thermal noise of any bodies/ material that is in reception direction of the antenna
- Antenna mainly consists of radiation resistor and a voltage source.
- Resistor gets allocated a temperature $T_{G}=T_{S}$, which is equal to the temperature of the surrounding $T_{S}$, if only thermal noise is present. It is higher, if other sources are present, too.
- If antenna gain is increased, antenna focuses more on wanted signal (amplified by gain). Noise level stays constant, since noise from smaller angle, but with higher gain is received.


### 12.3 2-Port-Noise-Figure

## Noise in Two-Ports - Noise-Figure



- SNR always gets worse
- Worsening described by Noise Figure $F$


## Noise in Two-Ports - Noise-Figure

- Noise figure defined as ratio between signal-to-noise at input to signal to noise at output: $F=$ $\frac{(S / N)_{\text {input }}}{(S / N)_{\text {output }}}$
- Usually given in decibel: $F_{d B}=10 \log (F), F \geq 1 ; F_{d B} \geq 0$
- For 2-port with gain $G$ is $S_{\text {output }}=G S_{\text {input }}$ and $F=\frac{N_{\text {output }}}{G N_{\text {input }}}$
- Can be thought of as generated by noise-sources solely at input and then amplified $\left(G N_{z u s}\right): F=$ $\frac{G\left(N_{\text {input }}+N_{z u s}\right)}{G N_{\text {input }}}=1+\frac{N_{z u s}}{N_{\text {input }}}$
- Gedanken-experiment: This noise is generated by resistors of equal value as before, but different (higher) temperature $T_{e q}$. So that we have $F=1+\frac{k T_{z u s} B R}{k T_{0} B R}=1+\frac{T_{z u s}}{T_{0}}$



## Noise in Active Elements



Description also as used in (linear) simulation programs

- Change matrix representation:

$$
\left[\begin{array}{c}
U_{1} \\
i_{1}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{ll}
A & B \\
C & D
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c}
U_{2} \\
i_{2}
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{c}
u_{R}(t) \\
i_{R}(t)
\end{array}\right]
$$

- Spectral density of voltage and current source are described as with noise-resistor and -conductance

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sqrt{\overline{U_{R}^{2}}}(\omega) & =4 k T B R_{u} \\
\sqrt{\overline{i_{R}^{2}}}(\omega) & =4 k T B G_{i}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Noise in Active Elements

continued...
Cross-correlation between the two $2\left(\hat{u}_{x u}(\omega)+j \hat{u}_{x i}(\omega)\right)=4 k T B\left(\gamma_{u}+j \gamma_{i}\right)$ and $\gamma_{u}+j \gamma_{i}$ is the equivalent noise-impedance

$$
\begin{aligned}
u_{x}^{2}(\omega) & =\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} c(\tau) e^{-\mathrm{j} \omega \tau} d \tau \\
c(\tau) & =\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-T}^{T} u_{1}(t) u_{2}(t+\tau) d \tau
\end{aligned}
$$

are describing the cross-correlation.

## Noise in Active Elements

continued...
Power at input:

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{R, i n}=\operatorname{Re}\left\{U I^{*}\right\}= & \overline{U_{s}^{2}} \frac{R_{i n}}{\left|Z_{s}+Z_{i n}\right|^{2}}+\overline{U_{R}^{2}} \frac{R_{i n}}{\left|Z_{s}+Z_{i n}\right|^{2}}+\overline{i^{2}} \frac{\left|Z_{s}\right|^{2} R_{i n}}{\left|Z_{s}+Z_{i n}\right|^{2}} \\
& +2 \operatorname{Re}\left\{\left(u_{x u}+j u_{x i}\right) \frac{Z_{s}^{*}}{\left|Z_{s}+Z_{i n}\right|^{2}}\right\} \\
= & 4 k T B \frac{R_{s} R_{i n}}{\left|Z_{s}+Z_{i n}\right|^{2}}\left[1+\frac{R_{u}}{R_{s}}+\frac{G_{i}}{G_{s}}+\frac{R_{s} \gamma_{u}+X_{s} \gamma_{i}}{R_{s}}\right] \\
& G_{s}=\frac{R_{s}}{R_{s}^{2}+X_{s}^{2}}=\frac{R_{s}}{\left|Z_{s}^{2}\right|}
\end{aligned}
$$

Output power is just multiplication with $G_{p}(u)$.

## Noise in Active Elements

continued...
Noise Figure:

$$
F=\frac{\frac{S}{N} \text { at input }}{\frac{S}{N} \text { at output }}
$$

Because in out thought experiment the amplifying 2-port is noiseless, we only need to check ant input:

$$
F=\frac{\text { Total noise power at input }}{\text { Thermal noise power from source }}
$$

And then

$$
F=1+\frac{R_{u}}{R_{s}}+\frac{G_{u}}{G_{s}}+\frac{R_{s} \gamma_{s}+X_{s} \gamma_{i}}{R_{s}}=1+\left(R_{u}+2 X_{s} \gamma_{i}\right) \frac{1}{R_{s}}+2 \gamma_{s}+G_{i} R_{s}+\frac{G_{i} X_{s}^{2}}{R_{s}}
$$

## Noise in Active Elements

continued...
Minimum noise (noise matching)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{\partial F}{\partial R_{s}}=0 \quad ; \quad \frac{\partial F}{\partial X_{s}}=0 \\
& \text { hence } \quad 0 \quad=\quad-\frac{R_{u} 2 X_{s} \gamma_{i}}{R_{s}^{2}}-G_{i}+\frac{G_{i} X_{s}^{2}}{R_{s}^{2}} \\
& \text { and } 0=2 \frac{\gamma_{i}}{R_{s}}+2 G_{i} \frac{X_{s}}{R_{s}} \Leftrightarrow X_{m}=-\frac{\gamma_{i}}{G_{i}} \\
& \Leftrightarrow \quad G_{i} R_{s}^{2}=R_{u}+2 X_{s} \gamma_{i}+G_{i} X_{s}^{2}=R_{u}-2 G_{i} X_{s m}^{2}+G_{i} X_{s m}^{2} \\
& \Leftrightarrow \quad R_{s}^{2}+X_{s}^{2}=\frac{R_{u}}{G_{i}} \quad \text { thus } \quad R_{m}=\sqrt{\frac{R_{u}}{G_{i}}-\frac{\gamma_{i}^{2}}{G_{i}^{2}}}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Noise matching $\neq$ power (conjugate) matching

## Noise in Active Elements

continued...

- Noise figure as deviation from minimum noise

$$
\begin{aligned}
\gamma_{i}= & -X_{m} G_{i} \\
F-F_{m}= & \frac{1}{R_{s}}\left[R_{u}+\left(R_{s}^{2}+X_{s}^{2}\right) G_{i}-2 X_{m} X_{s} G_{i}\right] \\
& -\frac{1}{R_{s}}\left[R_{u}+\left(R_{s}^{2}+X_{s}^{2}\right) G_{i}-2 X_{m}^{2} G_{i}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

- And finally

$$
F=F_{m}+\frac{G_{i}}{R_{s}}\left[\left(R_{s}-R_{m}\right)^{2}+\left(X_{s}-X_{m}\right)^{2}\right]
$$

### 12.4 Noise Temperature and Measurement

## Equivalent Noise Temperature

Noise of an arbitrary noisy 1-port: I's all in the temperature


$$
T_{e}=\frac{N_{0}}{k B}
$$

no physical temperature, but model

## Equivalent Noise Temperature



- Put it all in the temperature at input


## Noise Figure and Temperature

- Noiseless: $N_{\text {out }}=G k T B$
- Noisy: $N_{\text {out }}^{\prime}=G k T_{e} B+G k T B$
- Signal: $S_{O u t}=G S_{\text {in }}$
- Noise Figure:

$$
F=\frac{S_{\text {out }}}{N_{\text {out }}} \times \frac{N_{\text {out }}^{\prime}}{S_{\text {out }}}=\frac{G k B\left(T+T_{e}\right)}{G k T B}=1+\frac{T_{e}}{T}
$$

- Noise Temperature: $T_{e}=T(F-1)$


## Measure Noise

Naive approach

1. Measure Gain: $G$
2. Measure Noise power at output with matched input: $N_{\text {out }}^{\prime}=G\left(N_{i n}+N_{\text {add }}\right)=G k B\left(T+T_{e}\right)$
3. Calculate $T_{e}=\frac{N_{\text {out }}^{\prime}}{G k B}-T$

Inaccurate, if Gain measured narrow band (CW-signal) and with high power, only advised for very noisy circuits and with no budget.

## Y-Factor Method

Official noise measurement technique


- $T_{2} \gg T_{1}$ (mayby 16 dB )
- $N_{1}=G k T_{1} B+G k T_{e} B \quad N_{2}=G k T_{2} B+G k T_{e} B$
- $Y=\frac{N_{2}}{N_{1}}=\frac{T_{2}+T_{e}}{T_{1}+T_{e}}$
- $T_{e}=\frac{T_{1}-Y T_{2}}{Y-1}$

Noise source usually active device (e.g. avalanche diode)
Low noise amp practically VERY important (do not try this with plain spectrum analyzer)

### 12.5 Chain Formula

## Noise Figure of Chains



- Available noise power at ouput of 2nd 2-port $N_{2}=F_{12} G_{1} G_{2} k T B$
- Noise power of 2-port 1 at output of 2-port $2 N_{21}=F_{1} G_{1} G_{2} k T B$
- Contribution of 2-port $2 N_{22}=\left(F_{2}-1\right) G_{2} k T B$
- And in total

$$
\begin{aligned}
N_{2}=N_{21}+N_{22} & =k T B\left(F_{1} G_{1} G_{2}+\left(F_{2}-1\right) G_{2}\right) \\
& =k T B G_{1} G_{2}\left(F_{1}+\frac{F_{2}-1}{G_{1}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

- Chain equation for noisy 2-ports

$$
F_{12}=F_{1}+\frac{F_{2}-1}{G_{1}} \quad G_{12}=G_{1} G_{2}
$$

## References

## 13 Non-Linearities and Power Amplifiers

## What you Should Know after this Session

- See simple non-linearities
- Learn how they disturb your signal, or make it even impossible to receive it
- Design (approximate) systems regarding there non-linear behavior
- Calculate with intercept points
- Know classes of power amplifiers and comment on them


### 13.1 Linear Amplifiers

## Linear Amplifiers

So far we have only considered amplifiers that are (infinitely) linear, maybe a little bit noisy. This is not how the world is! At a certain (input) power all devices become non-linear. In the most extreme case they just blow up or start burning. Thus, we needs to deal with non-linearity.

- Non-Linearity, which is also signal distortion, need to be considered for power amplifiers (PA) and in modern communication systems also in LNA.


## Linear Amplifiers

- LNA linearity is an issue because of the high dynamic ranges which stem from
- Coexistence of different standards
- Coexistence and co-siting of different senders and receivers (base-stations)
- High distance to transceiver requirements
- complex modulation
- For power amplifiers (PA) most of the above is important, and
- Efficiency: Energy must be utilized in best possible way. This is especially true, but not limited to, for mobile-devices
- Thermal conditions (cooling), which means cost, life-time, space, serviceability


## Non-linear Distortions

Before going into efficiency and amplifier design, let's look at non-linearities more closely


- $f(U)$ is a non-linear element, whose characteristic at the operating point can be expressed as a Taylor-series (memory less) $I=f(U)=i_{0}+a_{1} U+a_{2} U^{2}+a_{3} U^{3}+\ldots$
- Consider excitation with a two-frequency-signal $U_{G}=U_{1} \cdot \cos \left(\omega_{1} t\right)+U_{2} \cdot \cos \left(\omega_{2} t\right)$
- See mixing terms for $R=0$ on the following slides


## NL: Frequency Mixing 1 \& 2

- Linear $i_{1}(t)=a_{1} U_{G}=a_{1} U_{1} \cos \left(\omega_{1} t\right)+a_{1} U_{2} \cos \left(\omega_{2} t\right)$
- Quadratic

$$
\begin{aligned}
i_{2}(t)= & a_{2} U_{G}^{2} \\
= & \frac{1}{2} a_{2}\left\{U_{1}^{2}+U_{2}^{2}+U_{1}^{2} \cos \left(2 \omega_{1} t\right)+U_{2}^{2} \cos \left(2 \omega_{2} t\right)+\right. \\
& \left.+2 U_{1} U_{2}\left[\cos \left(\left(\omega_{1}+\omega_{2}\right) t\right)+\cos \left(\left(\omega_{1}-\omega_{2}\right) t\right)\right]\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

## NL: Frequency Mixing 3

- Finally the Cubic part:

$$
\begin{aligned}
i_{3}(t)= & a_{3} U_{G}^{3} \\
= & \frac{1}{4} a_{3}\left\{U_{1}^{3} \cos \left(3 \omega_{1} t\right)+U_{2}^{3} \cos \left(3 \omega_{2} t\right)\right. \\
& +3 U_{1}^{2} U_{2}\left[\cos \left(\left(2 \omega_{1}+\omega_{2}\right) t\right)+\cos \left(\left(2 \omega_{1}-\omega_{2}\right) t\right)\right] \\
& +3 U_{2}^{2} U_{1}\left[\cos \left(\left(2 \omega_{2}+\omega_{1}\right) t\right)+\cos \left(\left(2 \omega_{2}-\omega_{1}\right) t\right)\right] \\
& +3\left(U_{1}^{3}+2 U_{2}^{2} U_{1}\right) \cos \left(\omega_{1} t\right) \\
& \left.+3\left(U_{2}^{3}+2 U_{1}^{2} U_{2}\right) \cos \left(\omega_{2} t\right)\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

- Total current is $I=i_{0}+i_{1}(t)+i_{2}(t)+i_{3}(t)$


## Signal Distortion



Signal distortion in the time domain for cubic characteristic $u_{\text {out }}(t)=\sqrt{10} u_{\text {in }}(t)-0.2 u_{i n}^{3}(t)$ for (a) different input voltages and (b) 2 V peak-voltage at input and additionally (ideally) low-pass filtered output voltage.

- Note the distortion of the signal
- Note, that the distortion is less in filtered case, but compression remains.


## The Spectrum



Mixing of two signals $\left(\omega_{1}, \omega_{2}\right)$ (schematically)

- Generally $|m|+|n|$ defines the order of the non-linearity


## Increase the Power



Different power output signals at the amplifier for characteristic $u_{\text {out }}(t)=\sqrt{10} u_{\text {in }}(t)-0.5 u_{i n}^{2}(t)-0.2 u_{i n}^{3}(t)$. (Quadratic term can be omitted completely, the picture only changes so that the corresponding line vanishes)

## The Spectrum... It's real



Date: 14.APR. 2011 13:57:08

Measured spectrum after nonlinear distortions through amplifier, note compression and ßooöf peaks.

NL: Sorted by Frequency

| $(n) \omega_{1}$ | $(m) \omega_{2}$ | Spectral component $\left(I_{\text {tot }}\right)$ | Use |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 0 | $a_{0}+a_{2} / 2 U_{1}^{2}+a_{2} / 2 U_{2}^{2}$ | DC $\propto$ Power |
| 0 | 1 | $a_{1} U_{2}+3 / 2 a_{3} U_{2}\left(U_{1}^{2}+U_{2}^{2} / 2\right)$ | Signal 2 |
| 0 | 2 | $a_{2} / 2 U_{2}^{2}$ | Doubler |
| 0 | 3 | $a_{3} / 4 U_{2}^{3}$ | Tripler |
| 1 | -2 | $3 / 4 a_{3} U_{1} U_{2}^{2}$ | IM3 |
| 1 | -1 | $a_{2} U_{1} U_{2}$ | Mixer (down) |
| 1 | 0 | $a_{1} U_{1}+3 / 2 a_{3} U_{1}\left(U_{2}^{2}+U_{1}^{2} / 2\right)$ | Signal 1 |
| 1 | 1 | $a_{2} U_{1} U_{2}$ | Mixer (up) |
| 1 | 2 | $3 / 4 a_{3} U_{1} U_{2}^{2}$ | Mixer (subharm) |
| 2 | -1 | $3 / 4 a_{3} U_{1}^{2} U_{2}$ | IM3 |
| 2 | 0 | $a_{2} / 2 U_{1}^{2}$ | Doubler |
| 2 | 1 | $3 / 4 a_{3} U_{1}^{2} U_{2}$ | Mixer (subharm.) |
| 3 | 0 | $a_{3} / 4 U_{1}^{3}$ | Tripler |

## Harmonic Frequencies

- Frequencies at $m \omega_{1}, n \omega_{2}$
- Not always a problem, because far off band and so can be filtered out.
- Careful: Sometimes at also harmonic resonances of filters! So design the filter carefully
- Technically used in frequency multipliers (doublers and tripler). Especially important for very high frequency applications (automotive radar at 75 GHz )


### 13.2 Intermodulation

## Inter-modulation

- Mixing of two or more signals
- Third order intermod at $2 \omega_{1}-\omega_{2}$ and $2 \omega_{2}-\omega_{1}$
- Fifth order intermod (not explicitly calculated) at $3 \omega_{1}-2 \omega_{2}, 3 \omega_{2}-2 \omega_{1}$ increasingly interesting, when third order is successfully combated, and in complex modulation schemes
- IM3 usually very disturbing, because very close to or in desired band. Thus, cannot easily be filtered.
- IM3 can blind a receiver (small signal cannot be detected in presence of two higher-power signal)
- IM3 in transmitter can disturb adjacent (undesired) channels/ bands


## Saturation/ Compression/ Blocking

- Gain is reduced with increasing input power. This requires, that $a_{3}<0$ ( $>0$ would not make sense at all).
- $\omega_{1}$-component: $i_{1}(t)=\left(a_{1} U_{1}+\frac{3}{4} a_{3} U_{1}^{3}\right) \cos \left(\omega_{1} t\right)$
- Blocker-Effect: The gain for a small signal $U_{2}$ is greatly reduced in the presence of a large signal (blocker) $U_{1}: U_{1} \gg U_{2}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
i_{1}(t)= & {\left[a_{1} U_{2}+\frac{3}{4} a_{3}\left(U_{2}^{3}+2 U_{1}^{2} U_{2}\right)\right] \cos \left(\omega_{2} t\right) } \\
\approx & \left(a_{1}+\frac{3}{2} a_{3} U_{1}^{2}\right) U_{2} \cos \left(\omega_{2} t\right) \\
& \frac{3}{2} a_{3} U_{1}^{2} \text { reduces gain for small signal } U_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

This may reduce sensitivity of the small signal so that it cannot be received and detected properly.

## Cross-Modulation



Cubic characteristic and excitation with $u_{i n}=0.1 V \sin (2 \pi t)+2(1+0.5 \cos (\pi / 8 t)) \sin (2.5 \pi t)$

- (a) shows the complete and combined signal at in and output, the modulation can be noted
- (b) is an artificial extraction of only the small signal. Note how much the small signal is destroyed by the modulation of the large one.


## Cross-Modulation II

We have seen before that the modulation on a large signals influences a smaller one:

- Input signal $U_{i n}=U_{1} \cos \left(\omega_{1} t\right)+[1+m(t)] U_{2} \cos \left(\omega_{2} t\right)$ with modulation $m(t),(\max \{m(t)\}<1)$
- This fires back into component number 1 like: $i_{3}^{\prime}(t)=\frac{3}{2} a_{3} U_{1} U_{2}^{2}\left[1+2 m(t)+m^{2}(t)\right] \cos \left(\omega_{1} t\right)$ and is quiet critical if $U_{2}$ is large.


### 13.3 Intercept Points

## Intercept-Point of Second Order (IP2)



Definition of intercept-points

- This is purely virtual: The intercept point is the intersection of (extrapolated) harmonic power with (extrapolated) ideal linear output power.
- Second Harmonic, 1-tone-excitation $\left.I\right|_{\omega_{1}}=\left.I\right|_{2 \omega_{1}} \Leftrightarrow a_{1} U_{1 I P 2}=\frac{a_{2}}{2} U_{1 I P 2}^{2} \Leftrightarrow U_{1 I P 2}=2 \frac{a_{1}}{a_{2}}$
- Second Harmonic, 2-tone-excitation $\left.I\right|_{\omega_{1}}=\left.I\right|_{\omega_{1}+\omega_{2}} \Leftrightarrow a_{1} U_{1 I P 2}=a_{2} U_{1 I P 2} U_{2 I P 2} \Leftrightarrow U_{1 I P 2}=\frac{a_{1}}{a_{2}}$


## Intercept-Point of Third Order

- Compare component at $\omega_{1}$ with component at $2 \omega_{1}-\omega_{2}:\left.I\right|_{\omega_{1}}=\left.I\right|_{2 \omega_{1}-\omega_{2}} \Leftrightarrow a_{1} U_{1 I P 3}=\frac{3}{4}\left|a_{3}\right| U_{1 I P 3}^{2} U_{2 I P 3}$ with 2 tones of equal amplitude: $U_{1}=U_{2}: \Leftrightarrow U_{1 I P 3}=\sqrt{\frac{4}{3} \frac{a_{1}}{\left|a_{3}\right|}}=k$
- Usually this is given for power rather than voltages and so in a $50 \Omega$-System

$$
P_{I P 3}=\frac{\left|U_{1_{I} P 3}\right|^{2}}{2 Z_{0}}=\frac{k^{2}}{2 Z_{0}}=I I P 3
$$

- What we have above is the IP3 x -axis (i.e. related to the input power) for amplifiers usually the OIP3 (related to the output power) is given. This can easily be obtained by $O I P 3=G_{p} I I P 3$
- In data-sheets you will usually find always the larger number for IP3, that is OIP3 for amps, but IIP3 for mixers (that have loss rather than gain)


## Intercept and Compression



- Strong connection between compression and intercept-point (cubic approximation).
- For compression of $c$ we have: $a_{1} U_{1 c}=\frac{3}{4} U_{1 c}^{3}=c a_{1} U_{1 c} \Leftrightarrow U_{1 c}=\sqrt{\frac{1-c}{\frac{3}{4} \frac{|a 3|}{a_{1}}}}=\sqrt{1-c} k$
- So for $\left.c\right|_{d B}=-1 \mathrm{~dB}$, hence $c=10^{-1 / 20}=0.89125$ and thus $\sqrt{1-c}=0.32977 \hat{=} 20 \log (\sqrt{1-c})=$ -9.636 dB .
- Rule of thumb: 1 dB -Compression is $9-10 \mathrm{~dB}$ below the Interceptpoint of third order.
- Similar the 3 dB -Compression is about 5 dB below IP3


## Calculation with Intercept Points



- For third order intermodulation-distance: $I M D_{3}=P_{\text {lin }}-P_{I M 3}$
- Linear power at output $P_{\text {lin }}=P_{\text {in }}+G$
- 3rd order power at output $P_{I M 3}=O I P_{3}+3\left(P_{\text {in }}-I I P 3\right)=I I P 3+G+3\left(P_{\text {in }}-I I P 3\right)$
- And so $I M D_{3}=P_{l i n}-P_{I M 3}=2\left(I I P_{3}-P_{i n}\right)$


## Chain Formula for Intercept-Points I

Wouldn't it be nice to have a chain formular for the non-linearity as we have it already for the noise? If so we could (roughly) calculate a full system with gain (linear), noise (sensitivity), and non-linearity (max power).


Good news: There is:

- Output of amp (distorer) ( $k$ is IIP3 for voltage so: $I I P 3=k^{2} /\left(2 Z_{0}\right)$ )
- The cubic coefficient for voltage-conversion is shortened by $g / c=k^{2}$, this is $c=\frac{3}{4} a_{3} Z_{0}$


## Chain Formula for Intercept-Points II

- At output of first distorer: $U_{1}=g_{1} U_{0}, U_{1}^{\prime}=c_{1} U_{0}^{3}=\frac{1}{k_{1}^{2}} U_{0}^{3}$
- At output of second distorer:

$$
\begin{aligned}
U_{2} & =g_{2} U_{1}=g_{1} g_{2} U_{0} \\
U_{2}^{\prime} & =c_{2} U_{1}^{3}+g_{2} U_{1}^{\prime}=\left(c_{2} g_{1}+g_{2} c_{1}\right) U_{0}^{3} \\
& =\left(\frac{g_{1}^{3} g_{2}}{k_{2}^{2}}+\frac{g_{2} g_{1}}{k_{1}^{2}}\right) U_{0}^{3} \\
& =\frac{g_{1} g_{2}}{k_{12}^{2}} U_{0}^{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

- An so $\frac{1}{k_{12}^{2}}=\frac{g_{1}^{2}}{k_{2}^{2}}+\frac{1}{k_{1}^{2}}$
- With $G_{p}=\frac{g_{1}^{2}}{2 Z_{0}}$ to come back to powers finally there is

$$
\frac{1}{I I P 3_{12}}=\frac{G_{1}}{I I P 3_{2}}+\frac{1}{I I P 3_{1}} .
$$

Which is the desired chain formula (again: only an approximation!)

### 13.4 Chain Formulas

## Chain Formulas



- Gain $G_{t o t}=G_{1} \cdot G_{2}$
- Noise $F_{t o t}=F_{1}+\frac{F_{2}-1}{G_{1}}$
- (Input) Intercept-Point of Third Order $\frac{1}{I I P 3_{t o t}}=\frac{G_{1}}{I I P 3_{2}}+\frac{1}{I I P 3_{1}}$


## Optimize Constant Gain Chain



- Optimize structure (not all BP are necessarily required!) Gain/ NF/IP3 for
- Total Gain 40 dB
- $P_{i n, \min }=-100 \mathrm{dBm}, B W=1 \mathrm{MHz}$
- $P_{\text {out }, \text { max }}=-30 \mathrm{dBm}, B W=1 \mathrm{MHz}$

Use of Excel-Sheet recommended

## Effects on Modulated Signals



Digitally modulated (QPSK) signal (a) undisturbed, (b) through PA AMAM-AMPM conversion

## 14 Power Amplifiers

### 14.1 Classes A,B,C

## Goal for Power-Amplifiers

- Good enough gain
- High efficiency (observe definition)
- Low (inband) signal distortion
- Low (outband) distortions
- Low buid-up of heat
- (and of course: Stability, insensitivity to temp (and other) drifts)

How to achieve that:

- Filter (or load tanks) $\Rightarrow$ this goes distortions
- Only switch the transistor on, when RF signal peaks $\Rightarrow$ avoid any DC pass through transistor


## Efficiencies

Efficiency usually is

$$
\eta=\frac{P_{\text {out }}}{P_{D C}}
$$

In case of power amps (where the amp has considerable input power and can have small gain) Power Added Efficiency is better suited

$$
\text { PAE }=\frac{P_{\text {out }}-P_{\text {in }}}{P_{D C}}
$$

## PA Classes ABC



Base-Emitter (Gate-Source) drive spcifies the PA-Class

## PA-Classes Explained: Class A



- Full Sine- wave is amplified
- transistor is driven to the edges (all other same as linear amplifier)
- Theorectical efficiency: $50 \%$
- Still good linearity, No harmonic filter required (for mild requirements)


## PA-Classes Explained: Class B



- Class-B: Only one half of sine is amplified $\Rightarrow$ Conduction Angle $\Theta=180^{\circ}$
- Theoretical Efficiency: $78 \%$
- Nonlinear, filter required for harmonics suppression


## PA-Classes Explained: Class B Push Pull



- One half is amplified by first transistor other half by second
- Requires two transistors and transformer (iron in circuit!) $\Rightarrow$ Conduction Angle $\Theta=180^{\circ}$ per transistor
- Theoretical Efficiency: 78 \%
- Good linearity, no harmonics filter (for mild requirements)
- Very good power delivery


## PA-Classes Explained: Class C



- Same Circuit as Class-B but only peak of sine-wave is amplified ( $\Theta<180^{\circ}$ )
- Theoretical Efficiency up to $100 \%$
- Highly nonlinear, Harmonics filter required, basically not useable for AM-signals
- Workhorse for FM-Modulation (e.g. GSM)


## Loadlines



Loadlines for PA-Classes (mostly static case)

## PA-Classes: Theory I



PA-Classes: Theory II

$$
\begin{aligned}
I_{c} & =I_{0}+\left(I_{p}-I_{0}\right) \cos (\Theta) ; \quad \Theta_{c}<\Theta<\Theta_{c} \\
U_{c} & =U_{C C}-\left(U_{C C}-U_{s a t}\right) \cos (\Theta)=U_{C C}-\left(I_{0}-I_{p}\right) R_{L L} \cos (\Theta)
\end{aligned}
$$

with $R_{L L}$ the load line resistance.
Zero of current determines $\Theta_{c}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\cos \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right) & =\frac{I_{0}}{I_{0}-I_{p}} \\
U_{c} & =U_{C C}+\frac{I_{0} R_{L L}}{\cos \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)} \cos \Theta \\
& =U_{C C}+\frac{I_{p} R_{L L}}{1-\cos \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)} \cos \Theta
\end{aligned}
$$

## PA-Classes: Theory III

For calculation of DC-Power get the average of the current into the collector

$$
\begin{aligned}
I_{d c} & =\frac{1}{2 \pi} \int_{-\Theta_{c} / 2}^{\Theta_{c} / 2} I_{0}+\left(I_{p}-I_{0}\right) \cos (\Theta) d \Theta \\
& =\frac{I_{p}}{2 \pi} \int_{-\Theta_{c} / 2}^{\Theta_{c} / 2}\left[\frac{\cos \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)}{1-\cos \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)}-\frac{\cos \Theta}{\cos \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)} d \Theta\right] \\
& =\frac{I_{p} \Theta_{c}}{2 \pi\left[1-\cos \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)\right]}\left[\frac{\sin \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)}{\left.\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}-\cos \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)\right]}\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

and the DC-Power is

$$
P_{d c}=\frac{U_{C C} I_{p} \Theta_{c}}{\pi} \frac{\sin \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)-\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2} \cos \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)}{1-\cos \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)}
$$

## PA-Classes: Theory IV

And now the RF-Power. The interesting first harmonic is

$$
\begin{aligned}
I_{R F} & =\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\Theta_{c} / 2}^{\Theta_{c} / 2}\left[I_{0}+\left(I_{p}-I_{0}\right) \cos (\Theta)\right] \cos \Theta d \Theta \\
& =\frac{I_{p}}{2 \pi} \frac{\Theta_{c}-\sin \Theta_{c}}{1-\cos \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

The voltage at a purely linear ohmic load is thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
U_{R L} & =\frac{-I_{p} R_{L}}{2 \pi} \frac{\Theta_{c}-\sin \Theta_{c}}{1-\cos \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)} \\
& =-\left(U_{C C}-U_{s a t}\right) \cos \Theta_{c}
\end{aligned}
$$

## PA-Classes: Theory V

And the Power $(P=\widehat{u} \hat{i} / 2)$

$$
P_{R F}=\frac{\left(U_{C C}-U_{s a t}\right) I_{p} \cos \Theta_{c}}{2 \pi} \frac{\Theta_{c}-\sin \Theta_{c}}{1-\cos \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)}
$$

and the (theoretical) load resistance

$$
R_{L}=\frac{2 \pi\left(U_{C C}-U_{s a t}\right)\left[\cos \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)\right]}{I_{P}\left[\Theta_{c}-\sin \Theta_{c}\right]}
$$

## PA-Classes: Theory VI



And the (theoretical) efficiency is

$$
\eta=\frac{U_{C C}-U_{s a t}}{2 U_{C C}} \frac{\Theta_{c}-\sin \Theta_{c}}{2 \sin \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)-\Theta_{c} \cos \left(\frac{\Theta_{c}}{2}\right)}
$$

## Simulations Results: Class A



Schematic for Class-A amplifier based on NXP's BFU590G BJT

## Simulations Results: Class A


$P_{\text {out }}=0.70 \mathrm{~W}, \mathrm{PAE}=40 \%$
$P_{d c}=1.7 \mathrm{~W}, P_{i n}=15 \mathrm{~mW}, G=17 \mathrm{~dB}$

## Simulations Results: Class B



Schematic for Class-B amplifier based on NXP's BFU590G BJT

## Simulations Results: Class B



$$
\begin{aligned}
& P_{\text {out }}=0.85 \mathrm{~W}, \mathrm{PAE}=46 \% \\
& P_{d c}=1.8 \mathrm{~W}, P_{\text {in }}=20 \mathrm{~mW}, G=16 \mathrm{~dB}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Simulations Results: Class B - Push Pull



## Simulations Results: Class B - Push Pull


$P_{\text {out }}=1.32 \mathrm{~W}, \mathrm{PAE}=44 \%$
$P_{d c}=2.9 \mathrm{~W}, P_{i n}=24 \mathrm{~mW}, G=17 \mathrm{~dB}$

## Simulations Results: Class C



Schematic for Class-C amplifier based on NXP's BFU590G BJT

## Simulations Results: Class C


time
$P_{\text {out }}=0.82 \mathrm{~W}, \mathrm{PAE}=65 \%$
$P_{d c}=1.2 \mathrm{~W}, P_{i n}=29 \mathrm{~mW}, G=14 \mathrm{~dB}$

## Comparison ABC: Harmonic Content



Comparison of harmonic content in output signal. Simulation engine: Xyce (Serial) via QUCS

### 14.2 Switching Amplifiers

## Higher Classes: Switching Amplifiers

|  | A | AB | B | C | D | E | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Principle | Analogue |  |  |  | Digital |  |  |
| \# Transistors | 1 | 2 | 2 | 1 (2) | 2 | 1 | 1 |
| $\eta_{\text {theory }}$ | 50\% | 50-78\% | 78.5 \% | 100\% |  |  |  |
| $P_{\text {out }}$ | ( |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |
| Linearity |  | () | ( | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |
| Cooling | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | © | () |  |  |

## Switching: Signal Form at Input



Pulse-width-modulation as input for switching amplifier

## Class D CMCD



## Current Mode Class D Switching Amplifier

## References

## 15 Mixers for Frequency Translation

## Mixer

- An initially non-linear device
- Changing the carrier frequency of the wanted signal
- Integral part of virtually every communication system
- Built of very simple components with very complex requirements


## This Chapter Will Enable You To

- Understand and describe mixer operation
- Select different mixer types according to your application
- Characterize mixer in oinear and non-linear performance
- Design a basic mixer


## Mixer in the System



- (Usually) Mixer at two locations (per branch) in the system
- Up- and Down-converter to translate from/to an intermediate frequency to/from a carrier frequency
- As basic building block of a modulator


### 15.1 Model

## The Ideal Mixer and How We Use It



- Simply speaking the mixer is a multiplier
- More specifically: In RF mainly used to multiply
- a $s_{1}=u_{1}(t) \cos \left(\omega_{1} t\right)$ with quiet slowly varying $u_{1}(t)$
- with a so called local oscillator $u_{2} \cos \left(\omega_{2} t\right) . u_{2}$ mostly fixed
- Result is (let's fix also $u_{1}$ for a while) $u_{\text {out }}(t)=u_{1} \cos \left(\omega_{1} t\right) \cdot u_{2} \cos \left(\omega_{2} t\right)=\frac{u_{1} u_{2}}{2}\left[\cos \left(\left[\omega_{1}+\omega_{2}\right] t\right)+\cos \left(\left[\omega_{1}-\omega_{2}\right] t\right.\right.$
- Sum and difference frequency arise $\rightarrow$ frequency conversion


## Application of Frequency Conversion



- Four fundamental frequency conversion modes
- Up- and Down-Conversion without frequency inversion and with freqeuncy inversion
- To be selected according to the application used


## Model of the Switch



- This (somewhat specialized) multiplication can be accomplished by a switch
- Switching is like mulitplicaiton with a rectangle-signal
- Rectangle consists of odd-frequency sine or cosine like $r(t)=1+\cos (\omega t)-\frac{1}{3} \cos (3 \omega t)+\frac{1}{5} \cos (5 \omega t)-\ldots$
- (Note Gibb's phenomenon in the figure above)


## Switch Mixer: The Multiplication



- Fundamental of switch does frequency conversion (harmonics can also be used $\rightarrow$ sub-harmonic mixing)
- Ideal switch-mixer does not explain any non-idealities


## Getting Real: What Kind of Switch?

Now, how to switch at rates of a muli-billion times a second?


- Schottky diode driven by (large) LO voltage
- For reference. Diode characteristic is like $i(u)=I_{0}\left(e^{\frac{q}{n k T}} u-1\right)$
- LO-voltage switches diode almost like switch (open and shut) for smaller RF/IF voltage
- High (momentary) LO-voltage: Low differential resistance
- Low (momentary) LO-voltage: High differential resistance


### 15.2 Structure

## (Most) Simple Mixer Structure


(Most) simple mixer: Here naming as down-converter

- One diode driven by LO-signal, RF-signal applied
- Matching networks: filtering to couple wanted signals
- Challenge: Present optimum impedances to diode at all frequencies
- Combine and separate the signals (as ALL signals are essentially at ONE port)
- Here important: $u_{L O, 0} \gg u_{R F, I F, 0}$, otherwise RF/IF would drive the diode $\rightarrow$ non-linear conversion.


## Spectrum of a Mixer



Spectrum (part of it) of a mixer (will be revisited later)

- Spectral components arise at $\pm n \omega_{L O} \pm m \omega_{I N}$ IN may be IF or RF, but essentially does not matter.
- $n, m$ are non-negative integer values
$-|n|+|m|$ is order of harmonic
- Power at spectral line determined by input powers of LO and input signal and of exact non-linear and linear (filter) characteristic of the system


## Some Parameters of the Diode-Mixer



- (Large signal) input impedance (match) of the diode at LO-frequency
- (Small signal) input impedance (match) of the pumped diode at RF-frequency (input)
- (Small signal) output impedance (match) of the pumped diode at IF-frequency (output)
- Match of the diode at other, unwanted frequencies (harmonics, image)
- Isolation between ports, especially LO-isolation

If all these parameters are known, mixer-design is matching only

## Macroscopic Parameters of Mixers



- Parameters with LO one-tone input (given for IF=in and $\mathrm{RF}=$ out)
- Conversion Gain (loss) $G=\frac{P_{\text {out }, R F}}{P_{\text {in }, I F}},(L=1 / G)$
- Also defined 1 dB compression of conversion gain
- Various rejection and isolation measures examples:
* Image rejection $R_{\text {out }, I M}=\frac{P_{\text {out }, R F}}{P_{\text {out }, I M}}$
* LO-Isolation $I_{\text {out }, L O}=\frac{P_{\text {out }, L O}}{P_{\text {in }, L O}}$


## Non-Linear Performance in a System



Mixer performance/ spectrum with two tones at input

- Intermodulation products of 2nd and 3rd (theortically also more) order arise
- If IF (RF) selected correctly (i.e. $f_{\min , I F}>f_{\max , I F}-f_{\text {min,IF }}$ ) most important, again, is IM3. (IM2 can be filtered more easily)


## Intercept, Compression, and Noise



Compression, Intercept-Point, and Intermodulation products/ distances

- Noise-figure (defined as descrease of signal-to-noise-ratio at out compared to SNR at in) for diodemixers is a little bit (about 0.5 dB ) higher than the conversion loss, later exact calculations will follow
- Compression point (for single diode mixers) is about 6 dB below the IP3 (intercept point of third order)


## Schottky Diode

Commonly (but no way exlusively) used non-linear element for mixers: The Schottky-Diode

(a) Beam-lead technology for high frequency (it's all about packaging), (b) Epitactical layers

- Metal-Semiconductor Junction
- First Semiconductor-Component, First electronic component in RF-techniques
- Experiment: Ferdinand Braun (1874), Theory: Walter Schottky (1938)

Physics of the Schottky-Diode

(a)

(b)

(c)
(a) $U=0$
(b) $U>0$ Forward Bias: Current flow, electrons Semiconductor $\rightarrow$ Metal
(c) $U<0$ Reverse-Bias, no current flow

- No Minority-carriers (only majority carriers) $\rightarrow$ no diffusion capacitance $\rightarrow$ no charge delay


## Schottky-Diode Equivalent Circuit



Epitaxy and simple equivalent circuit for Schottky Diode

- $I(U)=I_{0}\left(e^{\frac{q}{n k T} U}-1\right), n=1 \ldots 2$ ideality factor, $\alpha=\frac{q}{n k T} \approx 36 / \mathrm{V}$
- Small signal resistance $\frac{1}{r}=\frac{d I(U)}{U}=\alpha I_{0}\left(e^{\alpha U}-1+1\right)=\alpha\left(I+I_{0}\right)$
- Non-linear junction capacitance $C_{j}(U)=\frac{C_{j 0}}{\sqrt{1-\frac{U}{\Phi}}}$
- Max-frequency is determined by rate possible to reverse charge the junction capacitance via the series resistor $f_{\text {max }}=\frac{1}{2 \pi C_{j 0} R_{S}}=\ldots 1000 \mathrm{GHz}$


## Enhanced Spice Diode Model I

Model as used in common design SW


## Enhanced Spice Diode Model II

| Parameters (e.g. for Avago $\mathrm{HSMS}-8202$ Diode) |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Saturation Current | $I_{S}, I_{0}$ | 46 nA |
| Barrier Height | $E_{G} \approx \Phi$ | 0.69 V |
| Series Resistance | $R_{S}$ | $0.6 \Omega$ |
| Zero Bias junction Cap. | $C_{j 0}$ | 0.18 fF |
| Breakdown voltage | $B_{V}$ | 7.3 V |
| Junction Grading coef. | $M$ | 0.5 |
| Current at $B_{V}$ | $I_{B V}$ | $10 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ |
| Forw. Bias depl. coef | $F C, \gamma$ | 0.5 |
| Ideality factor | $n$ | 1.09 |
| transit Time | $T T$ | 0 |

Derived parameters

| Max.-frequency | $f_{c}=1 /\left(2 \pi R_{S} C_{j 0}\right)$ | 147 GHz |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Selfbias junc. resistance | $r=\alpha /\left(I+I_{0}\right)$ |  |
|  | 1 mA | $263 \Omega$ |
|  | 2.5 mA | $142 \Omega$ |

## Comments on Noise of the Schottky-Diode

- Shot-noise $\overline{i_{N}^{2}} \approx 2 k T B / r$

- Small signal resistance $r$ is noise-less (even if the formula above suggests something different)
- Noise-contribution of the diode itsself very small
- Signal-to-Noise-ratio only worsened by attenuation of the signal itsself (and thermal noise floor stays constant)


## (Ideal) Switch-mixer as Downconverter

Just for illustration and understanding. The time-domain-waveforms of an ideal mixer with switch ( $\omega_{L O}=$ $10, \omega_{R F}=11$ )



Note that there really! is the IF at frequency $\omega_{I F}=1$

### 15.3 Examples

## Example of a (Very Simple!) Single-Diode-Mixer

Mixer Schematic set up for mixing 2 GHz to 300 MHz . Used Schottky Diode is the Avago HSMS8202


- Bandpass-filter at LO and RF-port
- Low-pass-filter (just couple Cap to ground) at IF port


## Mixer in Time-Domain



Mixer Spectrum


- Conversion gain (as calculated from available RF-power [-10 dBm]) is -10.56 dB
- LO-isolation to RF-port is very bad, LO available is 17 dBm and at port 3 it is 12.24 dBm , so virtually no isolation ( 5 dBm ). That isthe problem of only one diode
- Similarly applies to some other isolation measures


## Powers at the Single-Diode Mixer



Output powers/ signals as functions of varied LO-Power and RF-Input power.

### 15.4 Harmonic Balance

## Simulation Techniques

- One could use full time-domain transient solvers such as SPICE
+ Conceptionally simple
+ Already many solvers available (e.g. SPICE)
- High-frequency and long component settling time $=$ long time to simulate $=$ long computation time
- Transmission/ delay components difficult to handle in time domain (it just may take multiple periods to get the refection back $=$ long simulation and computation times)
- Different concept: Take best from both worlds (frequency domain $=$ RF, and time domain $=$ SPICE)
- Additional advantage: Often (as in amplifiers, mixers, (frequency) multipliers) source frequencies are known (fundamental difference to oscillator!)


## Harmonic Balance: Idea I

Most common and widely used simulation technique for analysis of circuits with non-linear components in microwave engineering


## Harmonic Balance: Idea II

Most common and widely used simulation technique for analysis of circuits with non-linear components in microwave engineering


Simple idea

1. Sources are only at dicrete and known frequencies (tones)
2. Through non-linear processes only the discrete harmonics of the above tones arise
3. Total circuit will be split in three parts:
(a) Sources and loads
(b) Linear subcircuit (to be dealt with with normal linear simulation techniques)
(c) Non-linear subcircuit, possibly differential equations (time-delays). To be worked out in timedomain
4. Recombine all required currents and voltage at interface
5. Do this iteratively until desired accuracy (convergence) is reached

## Algorithm I



- Create nodal analysis-(transadmittance) matrix $(\overline{\bar{Y}})$ for all nodes in the linear subnetwork


## Algorithm II



- Currents at the connections to non-linear NW are $\vec{I}^{N}={\overline{\overline{Y_{S}}}}^{N \times M}{\overrightarrow{V_{S}}}^{N}+\overline{\bar{Y}}^{N \times N} \vec{V}^{N}=\vec{I}_{S}^{N}+\overline{\bar{Y}}^{N \times N} \vec{V}^{N}$ Note that superscripts denote the sizes and that these equations must be set up for every interesting frequency (harmonic) ( $K$ ), or rather the $K$ harmonics will be integrated in the equation above.
- Since we are only looking for harmonics, all currents and voltages are of the form $u(t)=\sum_{k=-K}^{K} U_{k} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{j} k \omega t}$


## Algorithm III

- In the non-linear sub-NW (we work in time domain) we find $i(t)=\Phi\left(u(t), \frac{d u(t)}{d t}, \ldots, \frac{d^{n} u(t)}{d t^{n}}, u(t-\tau)\right)$ $q(t)=\Psi\left(u(t), \frac{d u(t)}{d t}, \ldots, \frac{d^{n} u(t)}{d t^{n}}, u(t-\tau)\right)$ considering mainly solid-state devices, that have non-linear capacitances ( $q$ ), but not non-linear inductors, therefore we can neglect those
- Transform this back via DFT into the frequency domain
- Harmonic Balance Equation: Match current and voltages at all connections yields $\vec{E}=\overline{\bar{Y}} \vec{U}+\vec{I}_{S}+$ $\vec{I}_{G}+\mathrm{j} \overline{\bar{\Omega}} \vec{Q} \doteq 0$


## Algorithm IV

- The job is done, when this equation is fulfilled (i.e. error vector $\vec{E} \cdot \vec{E}^{T}$ is minimized (iterative algorithm) )
- Start with a some assumption (e.g. the DC solution obtained from transient analysis)
- Set-up the equation and then use some minimization algorithm (Newton-Raphson-Algorithm) to walk to the solution

This seems concetionally simple, but is too hard to do by hand. For the computer you must consider:

- Large number of Harmonics (possibly with multitone excitation) and large networks
$\Rightarrow$ Large system of equations, high memory requiremens and long time for calculation
$\Rightarrow$ Slow (or bad) convergence, especially unreliable when (as in a mixer) one component (LO) is much larger than others (RF)


### 15.5 More Diode Mixers

## Balanced and Other Diode Mixers

Are we satisfied with the Single-Diode-mixer?It's cheap and simpleIsolation between ports is bad (all signals everywhere)
$\bigodot$
Dynamic range is bad (RF-efficiency bad, because matching bad)LO-efficiency bad

## Balanced Mixers

Generic form of a balanced mixer, coupler couples equal power but different phase.


## Balanced Mixers: Signal Flow Graph

Signal flow Graph for the generic balanced mixer (idealized)


## Balanced Mixers: Solution

Solution of the signal Flow Graph (equal Diodes) $\Gamma_{D 2}=\Gamma_{D 2}=\Gamma$ and equal power $\left|S_{i j}\right|=S$ all equal and symmetric $S_{i j} /\left|S_{i j}\right|=S_{j i} /\left|S_{j i}\right|=p_{i j} \quad|p|=1$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Gamma_{i n 1} & =\frac{b_{1}}{a_{1}}=S_{21} S_{12} \Gamma_{D 1}+S_{31} S_{13} \Gamma_{D 2}=S^{2} \Gamma\left(p_{21}^{2}+p_{31}^{2}\right) \\
T_{41} & =\frac{b_{4}}{a_{1}}=S_{21} S_{42} \Gamma_{D 1}+S_{31} S_{43} \Gamma_{D 2}=S^{2} \Gamma\left(p_{21} p_{42}+p_{31} p_{43}\right) \\
\Gamma_{i n 4} & =\frac{b_{4}}{a_{4}}=S_{24} S_{42} \Gamma_{D 1}+S_{34} S_{43} \Gamma_{D 2}=S^{2} \Gamma\left(p_{24}^{2}+p_{43}^{2}\right) \\
T_{14} & =\frac{b_{1}}{a_{4}}=S_{24} S_{12} \Gamma_{D 1}+S_{34} S_{13} \Gamma_{D 2}=S^{2} \Gamma\left(p_{24} p_{12}+p_{34} p_{13}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

## Balanced Mixers with Hybrid Coupler

Perfect match of LO and RF
Straight path is reference: $p_{21}=p_{12}=p_{34}=p_{43}=1$, diagonal path is $90^{\circ}$ phase shift: $p_{31}=p_{13}=p_{24}=$ $p_{42}=j$ and no power lost $S=1 / \sqrt{2}$


$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\Gamma_{i n 1}=\frac{\Gamma}{2}(2-2)=0 & T_{41}
\end{array}=\frac{b_{4}}{a_{1}}=j \Gamma
$$

## Balanced Mixers with Rat Race Coupler

## Perfect isolation of LO and RF

Short paths are reference: $p_{21}=p_{12}=p_{31}=p_{13}=p_{34}=p_{43}=1$, long path is $180^{\circ}$ (relative) phase shift: $p_{24}=p_{42}=-1$ and no power lost $S=1 / \sqrt{2}$


$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\Gamma_{i n 1}=\Gamma & T_{41}=0 \\
\Gamma_{i n 4}=\Gamma & T_{14}=0
\end{array}
$$

## Hybrid-Coupler Balanced Mixer

Balanced Diode Mixer with Quadrature Coupler


- Quad-coupler shows the sum of mismatch at the uncoupled port and the difference of mismatch at the coupled one.
- Good match (if diodes are equal)
- Poor Isolation


## Rat-Race Coupler Balanced Mixer

Balanced Diode Mixer with Rat-race Coupler


- Rat-race-coupler shows the difference of mismatch at the uncoupled port and sum difference of mismatch at the coupled one.
- Poor match
- Very good isolation (if diodes are equal)


## Image Reject Mixer



- Separates the lower and upper side band


## Image Reject Mixer: Theory I

$$
\begin{aligned}
u_{R F}(t) & =\hat{u_{u}} \cos \left(\omega_{L O}+\omega_{I F}\right) t+\hat{u_{l}} \cos \left(\omega_{L O}-\omega_{I F}\right) t \\
u_{R F}^{A}(t) & =\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left[\hat{u_{u}} \cos \left(\omega_{L O}+\omega_{I F}\right) t+\hat{u_{l}} \cos \left(\omega_{L O}-\omega_{I F}\right) t\right] \\
u_{R F}^{B}(t) & =\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left[\hat{u_{u}} \cos \left(\omega_{L O} t+\omega_{I F} t-90^{\circ}\right)+\hat{u_{l}} \cos \left(\omega_{L O} t-\omega_{I F} t-90^{\circ}\right]\right. \\
u_{I F}^{A}(t) & =\frac{K}{2 \sqrt{2}}\left[\hat{u_{u}} \cos \left(\omega_{I F} t\right)+\hat{u_{l}} \cos \left(\omega_{I F} t\right)\right]=\frac{K}{2 \sqrt{2}}\left(\hat{u_{u}}+\hat{u_{l}}\right) \cos \left(\omega_{I F} t\right) \\
u_{I F}^{B}(t) & =\frac{K}{2 \sqrt{2}}\left[\hat{u_{u}} \cos \left(\omega_{I F} t-90^{\circ}\right)+\hat{u_{l}} \cos \left(-\omega_{I F} t-90^{\circ}\right]\right. \\
& =\frac{K}{2 \sqrt{2}}\left[\hat{u_{u}} \sin \left(\omega_{I F} t\right)-\hat{u_{l}} \sin \left(\omega_{I F} t\right)\right] \\
& =\frac{K}{2 \sqrt{2}}\left(\hat{u_{u}}-\hat{u_{l}}\right) \sin \left(\omega_{I F} t\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

## Image Reject Mixer: Theory II

So after the second coupler there is

$$
\begin{aligned}
u_{1}(t) & =\frac{K}{2 \sqrt{2}}\left[\left(\hat{u_{u}}-\hat{u_{l}}\right) \sin \left(\omega_{I F} t-90^{\circ}\right)+\left(\hat{u_{u}}+\hat{u_{l}}\right) \cos \left(\omega_{I F} t\right)\right] \\
& =\frac{K}{\sqrt{2}} \hat{u_{l}} \cos \left(\omega_{I F} t\right) \\
u_{2}(t) & =\frac{K}{2 \sqrt{2}}\left[\left(\hat{u_{u}}-\hat{u_{l}}\right) \sin \left(\omega_{I F} t\right)+\left(\hat{u_{u}}+\hat{u_{l}}\right) \cos \left(\omega_{I F} t-90^{\circ}\right)\right] \\
& =\frac{K}{\sqrt{2}} \hat{u_{u}} \sin \left(\omega_{I F} t\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

This shows that LSB and USB are at different ports

## Low Frequency Hybrid

For low (IF) frequencies a narrow band hybrid coubler can be build from lumped LC-Element:


Design equation: $L=\frac{Z_{0}}{2 \pi f_{0}} C=\frac{1}{Z_{0} 2 \pi f_{0}}$

## Even More Diodes

Double balanced Mixer with four diodes


- Reverse polarity switch (always two diodes are open, two are short in rythm of LO
- Prevents DC and even order harmonics of LO and RF
- Shorted diodes effectively isolate RF and LO (and vice versa)
- Restricted by transformers, other than that. broadband
- Good isolation of all fundamentals and spuriouses
- Requries higher LO-Power
- Well matched at all ports


## Comparison of Diode-Mixers

Data after (1]

|  | Single | Balanced | Doub. Bal. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Conversion Gain | ()) | 2 | $\bigcirc$ |
| Spurious Perf. | - | (2) | () |
| Dynamic Range | $\bigcirc$ | (2) | () |
| Isolation | $\bigcirc$ | (2) | () |
| Pump Power | () | 2 | $\odot$ |
| Complexity | () | (2) | $\bigcirc$ |
| Bandwidth | - | () | () |

### 15.6 FET and BJT Mixers

## Gilbert-Cell Mixers



Gilbert Cell (Double Balanced Mixer) (a), single balanced mixer (b)

## Gilbert-Cell Mixers: Function



Positive half (a) and negative half (b) switching polarity of lower differential amplifier

## Gilbert-Cell Mixers: Simulation


(a)

(b)

Simulation of a Gilbert Cell mixer.

## Gilbert-Cell Mixers: Advantages

Bipolar of FET-technology possibleintegration (also with CMOS) possieGood port isolationMixing with GainBalanced signal requiredComplex design: limited in frequency range (only few GHz )Poor noise (not demonstrated here)
### 15.7 Noise in Mixers

## Noise in Mixers

Distinguish between Single Side Band (SSB) and Double Side Band DSB mixer noise.


Double-Side Band (a), Single Side Band (SSB) (b) and SSB with filtered image.

## Noise in Mixers: DSB I



Calculation for situation shown (adapt accordingly for different situations)

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{I F} & =S_{u p} G_{u p}+S_{l o w} G_{l o w} \\
N_{I F} & =N_{u p} G_{u p}+N_{l o w} G_{l o w}+N_{m i x, u p} G_{u p}+N_{m i x, l o w} G_{l o w}
\end{aligned}
$$

with mixer noise contribution projected at the input and $G_{u p}, G_{l o w}$ conversions in different bands.

## Noise in Mixers: DSB II



For simplified relations: $N_{i n}=N_{u p}=N_{l o w}, N_{m i x}=N_{m i x, u p}=N_{m i x, l o w}$ $G=G_{u p}=G_{l o w}, S=S_{u p}=S_{l o w}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{I F} & =2 S G, \quad N_{I F}=2 N_{i n} G+2 N_{m i x} G \\
\frac{S_{I F}}{N_{I F}} & =\frac{2 S G}{2 N_{i n} G+2 N_{m i x} G}=\frac{S}{N_{i n}} \frac{1}{1+\frac{N_{m i x}}{N_{i n}}} \\
F_{D S B} & =1+\frac{N_{m i x}}{N_{i n}}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Noise in Mixers: SSB



Calculation for situation shown (adapt accordingly for different situations)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& S_{I F}=S_{u p} G_{u p} \\
& N_{I F}=N_{u p} G_{u p}+N_{l o w} G_{l o w}+N_{m i x, u p} G_{u p}+N_{m i x, l o w} G_{l o w}
\end{aligned}
$$

as before, simplification as above yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{I F} & =S G, \quad N_{I F}=2 N_{i n} G+2 N_{m i x} G \\
\frac{S_{I F}}{N_{I F}} & =\frac{S G}{2 N_{i n} G+2 N_{m i x} G}=\frac{S}{N_{i n}} \frac{1}{2+\frac{2 N_{m i x}}{N_{i n}}} \\
F_{S S B} & =2+2 \frac{N_{m i x}}{N_{i n}}=2 F_{D S B} \quad 3 \mathrm{~dB} \text { more than in DSB }
\end{aligned}
$$

Or: Noise figure in SSB is 3 dB higher than in DSB

## Noise in Mixers: SSB Filtered

It's unfair to blame the mixer for an unwanted noise in the sideband? OK....


Calculation for situation shown (adapt accordingly for different situations)

$$
S_{I F}=S_{u p} G_{u p}
$$

$$
N_{I F}=N_{u p} G_{u p}+N_{m i x, u p} G_{u p}+N_{m i x, l o w} G_{l o w}
$$

as before, simplification as above yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{I F} & =S G, \quad N_{I F}=N_{i n} G+2 N_{m i x} G \\
\frac{S_{I F}}{N_{I F}} & =\frac{S G}{N_{i n} G+2 N_{m i x} G}=\frac{S}{N_{i n}} \frac{1}{1+\frac{2 N_{m i x}}{N_{i n}}} \\
F_{S S B} & =1+2 \frac{N_{m i x}}{N_{i n}}<2 F_{D S B}
\end{aligned}
$$

Only the noise contribution of the mixer counts...

## References

[1] G. D. Vendelin, A. M. Pavio und U. L. Rohde. Microwave Circuit Design Using Linear and Nonlinear Techniques. John Wiley and Sons, 1990.

## 16 An Introduction to Radar

## What to Learn

- How does Radar work?
- What does a Radar System look like
- The radar equation
- Different kinds of radar
- Some specialties (Noise, matched filter)

For more information see [1, 2]

## Trivia

Radar $=$ Radio Detection and Ranging, so it means that a target should be detected and ranged (i.e. its distance from measurement point shall be determined).
Radar became "popular" during WWII to detect targets (mostly ships and aircrafts) of the enemy.

## Types of Radar (Application side)

- Flight Control Radar
- Surveillance and flight control
- weather radar
- taxying
- detect possible danger (birds)
- Ships
- Detect ships near coast and harbour, or ship-ship detection to avoid collision
- Navigational Aid (vision in bad weather)
- Search and Rescue
- Rail and car traffic
- Contactless Measurement of speed, distance, acceleration
- Sensor for autonomous driving
- Find obstacles (parking aid), distance to wagons
- Earth surveillance and discovery
- Geo-sciences
- Agriculture
- Enviromental protection
- Meterology and aerospace
- weather radar (find rain, storms)
- measurements on earth, detection of vegetation
- Manufacturing processes
- contactless measurement of position, speed, distance etc.
- Smart Buildings
- Occupancy detection
- Life detection (heart beat)
- Approach detection and security measures
- And lots of military applications in a.m. disciplines

Examples can be found under http://www.radartutorial.eu/19.kartei/ka01.de.html

## Types of Radar: More Technical Side

Surveillance Radar to search and observe a specified area for objects (e.g. some air volume for planes and rockets, some coast).

Target Tracking Radar is used to track a target (military of civilian), i.e. the radar signal is optimized (focused) to track the target, that previously has been found by the a.m.

## Measurement Radar

Synthetic Aperture Radar (not covered here), where a large antenna area is generated by a moving radar system and later signal processing, used for precise imaging.

## Types of radar: Purely Technical

Pulse (Doppler) Radar send out a modulated pulse and detects via measurement of delay of received pulse the distance to target and frequency shift its speed. This is the standard idea.

Continuous Wave (CW) Radar sends out a sinusoidal CW signal and detects if there is a shifted frequency in the received signal $\rightarrow$ there is some movement in the area

Frequency Modulated CW Radar (FMCW) sends out a chirped signal and can measure speed and distance from fourier-transform of received signal

## How does Radar Work?

- Send out a signal (e.g. modulated pulse, chirp, CW-signal)
- Receive/ measure the echo
- calculated desired parameters (distance, angle of observance, speed)


## Radar Principle and Terms


with

- $\Delta t$ time difference between sending and receiving the pulse,
- $\sigma$ the target's scattering cross section,
- $v_{R}$ the radial (toward the radar system) speed of the target
- $P_{t}$ transmitted power and $G_{t}$ Gain of the transmitting antenna


## Radar Equation

- A modulated (with $f_{0}$ ) impluse of power $P_{S}$ and duration $t_{p}$ and pulse repetition period $T$ is sent.
- Pulse is attenuated on way to target by power density $\frac{P_{t} G_{t}}{\ell^{2}}=S_{t}$
- Reflected power is $\frac{\sigma}{4 \pi}$ per radiant
- Receiving antenna can make $\frac{A_{r}}{4 \pi \ell^{2}}$ out of the reflected power

Full equation is thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{r} & =P_{t} G_{t} \frac{\sigma}{4 \pi} \frac{A_{r}}{4 \pi} \frac{1}{\ell^{4}}=P_{t} \frac{G_{t} \sigma A_{r}}{(4 \pi)^{2} \ell^{4}} \\
& =P_{t} \frac{G_{t} \sigma G_{r} \lambda^{2}}{(4 \pi)^{3} \ell^{4}} \Rightarrow P_{t} \frac{G_{t} \sigma G_{r} \lambda^{2}}{(4 \pi)^{3} \ell^{4}} \frac{1}{L_{t} L_{a t m}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Note the $1 / \ell^{4}$ decay of signal strength, which greatly limits detection range, and the atmospheric and cable losses $L_{a t m}$ and $L_{t}$.

## Radar Cross Section

$\sigma$ is the (virtual) reflection area of the target.
Definition $\sigma=\frac{4 \pi \ell^{2} S_{r}}{S_{t}}$ with $S_{r}$ the reflected power density and thus $4 \pi \ell^{2} S_{r}$ the virtual total power reflected by the target, if it where uniformly distributed on a sphere with radius $\ell, S_{t}$ the incident power density and It only seems to increase with $\ell^{2}$, but also $S_{t}$ drops the same, so $\ell$ cancels out.
Simple geometries with $x \gg \lambda$,

| Geometry | $\sigma$ |
| ---: | ---: |
| metallic sphere | $\pi r^{2}$ |
| rectangle (perp. to signal) | $\frac{4 \pi b^{2} h^{2}}{\lambda^{2}}$ |
| rectangle (any other angle) | 0 |
| cylinder | $\frac{2 \pi r h^{2}}{\lambda}$ |
| bird | $0.01 \mathrm{~m}^{2}$ |
| $($ wo) man | $1 \mathrm{~m}^{2}$ |
| car | $100 \mathrm{~m}^{2}$ |
| truck | $200 \mathrm{~m}^{2}$ |
| ship (broadside) | up to $500 \mathrm{~m}^{2}$ |
| radar reflector | $20000 \mathrm{~m}^{2}$ |

According to http://www.radartutorial.eu/01.basics/Radar\ Cross\ Section.en.html
Consequences: in military use stealth techniques (i.e. reflect the power away from the target, in civil use radar reflector

## Radar Cross Section of Plane



## Direction to Target

Is found simply by a directive antenna, i.e. one that only illuminates a certain small angular segment of space
Angular resolution of antenna is about $\Theta_{3 d B}, \phi_{3 d B} \approx 70^{\circ} \frac{\lambda}{d}$ with $d$ extend in dimension of interest Gain $G=\approx \frac{27000}{\Theta_{3 d B} \phi_{3 d B}}$ with $\Theta$ and $\phi$ elevation and azimuth.

- Parabolic antenna (round or elliptic), elliptic, if only azimuthal angle is of interest, not elevation. Antenna needs to be mechanically steered
- phased array antenna for electronic beam steering


## Block Diagram (Analog Part)


(Mostly) Analog part of a typical pulse Radar

## Block Diagram (Digital Part)


(Mostly) Digital part of a typical pulse Radar

## Description to Block Diagram

Antenna Is the radiating and receiving element. For angular (azimuthal and elevation resolution it is mechanically or electronically steered (see above).

Duplexer Isolate TX from RX
LNA Low Noise Amplifier for Pre-amplification

Pulse and PA Pulse forming and Power amplifier
Mixer Up- and Down-converter from/to Intermediate Frequency
STALO Stable (stabilized) local Oscillator, should have a long coherence length
IP Amp amplifies the intermediate frequency
COHO Coherent Oscillator for the IP Signal
IQ Demodulator demodulated the IF to I and Q in base band and thus also detects the phase of the signal

DAC Digital Analog Converter
Pulse Filter (Matched) Filter for base-band filtering
Doppler Filterbank Filterbank to detect the Doppler Shift
Target Detect detects any target and more importantly disregards all the clutter and non-targets
Parameter Estimation e.g. Calman Filtering for target movement estimation
Target Calculation Calculated the target position, speed kind of etc. for later

## Display

## Distance and Speed (Single Impulse)

Assume ideal modulated (with $f_{0}$ ) pulse

- Received Puls delayed by $\Delta t \Rightarrow \ell=\frac{c}{2 \Delta t}$
- Received pulse frequency shifted by $f_{D} \Rightarrow v_{R} \approx \frac{1}{2} c f_{D} / f_{0}{ }^{1}$
$v_{R}$ the velocity directly in direction to the radar.
Examples

| Distance/Speed | $\Delta t$ | $f_{D} @ 10 \mathrm{GHz}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $1 \mathrm{~m}(/ \mathrm{s})$ | $6,7 \mathrm{~ns}$ | 67 Hz |
| $10 \mathrm{~m}(/ \mathrm{s})$ | 67 ns | 667 Hz |
| $1 \mathrm{~km}(/ \mathrm{h})$ | $6,7 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ | $18,5 \mathrm{~Hz}$ |
| $10 \mathrm{~km}(/ \mathrm{h})$ | $67 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ | 185 Hz |
| $100 \mathrm{~km}(/ \mathrm{h})$ | $667 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ | 1852 Hz |
| $1000 \mathrm{~km}(/ \mathrm{h})$ | $6,7 \mathrm{~ms}$ | 18519 Hz |

[^2]
## Unambiguous Range: Periodic Pulses

What happens if a large target is far away, so far that run time of pulse exceeds pulse repetition interval $\left(T_{P R}\right)$


It will be detected as if received after $\Delta t_{2}^{\prime}<\Delta t_{2}$

## Get Rid of Distance Ambiguity

Ambiguity as described above is a problem...
To get rid of it: Chance (slightly) the repetition Interval ( $T_{R P}$ ) from Interval to interval
Clear targets within first range will stay as they where

Targets in higher order intervals will move drastically
Get rid of the moving targets

## The Pulse



Spectrum of a single pulse with rather steep (rectangular) edges. Observe usual $\sin (x) / x$ pattern.

## The Repetition of Pulses



Spectrum of a repeated pulses, observe overlay of $\sin (x) / x)$ and comb pattern

## The Repetition of Pulses II



Zoom into the comb spectrum of a periodically repeated pulse pattern.

## Noise and Input Filtering



Noise voltage of resistor with temperature $T$ is $U_{N}=2 \sqrt{k T B_{n} R}$ with $k=1.38 \cdot 10^{-23} \mathrm{Ws} / \mathrm{K}, B_{n}$ is noise-bandwidth of filter $B_{n} \approx 1 \ldots 1.5 B_{3 d B}$.

## Noise Figure and Noise Temperature

Noise figure $F=\frac{(S / N)_{\text {in }}}{(S / N)_{\text {out }}}$ with $S, N$ Signal- and noise power.

$$
\begin{aligned}
F & =\frac{S_{\text {in }}}{S_{\text {out }}} \frac{N_{\text {out }}}{N_{\text {in }}}=\frac{1}{G} \cdot \frac{G\left(N_{\text {in }}+\Delta N\right)}{N_{\text {in }}} \\
& =1+\frac{\Delta N}{N_{\text {in }}}=1+\frac{\Delta N}{k T_{0} B_{n}}=1+\frac{k T_{n} B_{n}}{k T_{0} B_{n}} \\
\Leftrightarrow T_{n} & =(F-1) T_{0}=\frac{\Delta N}{k B_{n}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Last is the equivalent noise temperature, i.e. the temperature the system (receiver) has, if all noise would be thermal noise (which it is not).

## Antenna Noise Temperature

Antenna is the only noise reducing element! (Actually: Noise is kept constant and signal is amplified)

$$
T_{A}=\frac{N_{A}}{k B_{n}}
$$

Reads weired, but $k B_{n}$ is the reference noise with receiver bandwidth $B_{n}$ and $N_{A}$ is the total noise that the antenna receives consisting of possible thermal noise and more (i.e. man made noise). The key is: The thermal component can be of much lower temperature, as the antenna is possibly pointed to free space with temp. as low as $\approx 3 \mathrm{~K}$. Thus, $T_{A}$ can be $\ll T_{0}$.

## System Noise Temperature



Total noise temperature is thus

$$
T_{\text {sys }}=T_{A}+T_{0}\left(L_{P}-1\right)+L_{P} T_{R}
$$

Example: $T_{A}=100 \mathrm{~K}, T_{0}=290 \mathrm{~K}, L_{P}=2 \mathrm{~dB}, T_{R}=150 \mathrm{~K}(F=1.8 \mathrm{~dB})$
Thus

$$
T_{\text {sys }}=(100+290(1.585-1)+1.585 \cdot 150) \mathrm{K}=507 \mathrm{~K}
$$

## Maximum Detectable Range

With the radar equation we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\frac{S}{N}\right)_{\text {out }} & =P_{t} \frac{G_{t} \sigma G_{r} \lambda^{2}}{(4 \pi)^{3} \ell^{4}} \frac{1}{k T_{\text {sys }} B_{n} L_{t} L_{\text {atm }}} \\
\Leftrightarrow \ell & =\sqrt[4]{P_{t} \frac{G_{t} \sigma G_{r} \lambda^{2}}{(4 \pi)^{3} \ell^{4}} \frac{1}{k T_{\text {sys }} B_{n} L_{t} L_{\text {atm }}\left(\frac{S}{N}\right)_{\text {out }}}}
\end{aligned}
$$

and depends greatly on...

- Transmitter power doubling power gives $20 \%$ more range, for each dB more power there is $6 \%$ more distance.
- Assume monostatic radar (i.e. $G_{t}=G_{r}$ ) doubling gain gives about $40 \%$ more gain, for each dB more gain (per antenna) there is $12 \%$ more distance.
- Radar Cross section is important, the larger the object, the further you can see it.
- Bandwidth $B_{n}$ is important, this is dominated by the pulse width: The longer the pulse, the narrower the noise band and thus the longer is range. This is clear, since a longer pulse has proportionally more energy. However, longer pulses limit minimum detectable range and resolution.


## Minimum Range and Resolution

- Minimum Range: Receiver is "blinded"during transmission of pulse $t_{\text {pulse }}$ and some settling time $t_{s}$ for e.g. ramping down amplifier, evtl. switching.

$$
\ell_{\text {min }}=\frac{c}{2}\left(t_{p u l s e}+t_{s}\right)
$$

- To separate targets they must be further apart than the length of half the pulse

$$
\ell_{\text {res }}=c t_{\text {pulse }}
$$

## Doppler and Ambiguity

- Imagine: When continuously received, the signal from moving target is a periodic signal with frequency $f_{0}+f_{D}$, and in base band only the shift $f_{D}$.
- Pulse radar does not continuously receive, it pulses and therefore samples the incoming signal with repetition rate $f_{P R}$ or interval $T_{P R}=1 / f_{P R}$.
- Thus, Doppler signal is sampled with $f_{P R}$ (see also comb spectrum of periodic pulses). So Nyquist's criterion applies with un-ambiguous range of $f_{D}< \pm \frac{f_{P R}}{2}$.
- Faster signals with higher Doppler shifts fall out of this range and are sub-sampled.


## FMCW Radar

Frequency Modulated Continuous Wave Radar (principle)


Simple FMCW-radar with linearly modulated chirp. Frequency deviation between send and receive gives:

$$
\ell=\frac{\Delta f T}{f_{\max }-f_{\min }} \cdot \frac{c}{2}
$$More energy in pulse $\rightarrow$ higher dynamic range and distanceno dead time of receiver (only $1 / f$-noise limits min range)

(2) parameters can be calculated from fourier transform of chirp and same rules as for pulseDoppler results in frequency shifts, which cannot be separated from frequency shift due to delay/ distance

## FMCW Radar with Doppler



FMCW-radar with linearly modulated chirp with up and down ramp. $\Delta f$ frequency shift due to delay/ distance.

- On up: $\Delta f_{1}=\Delta f-f_{D}$
- On down: $\Delta f_{2}=\Delta f+f_{D}$
- $\Delta f=\frac{\Delta f_{1}+\Delta f_{2}}{2}$
- $f_{D}=\frac{\Delta f_{2}-\Delta f_{1}}{2}$

Characteristics as above

## Simple CW Radar

- Further simplification: Send only continuous signal.

No Timing in signal, thus no distance/ delay can be calculated

- Only Doppler shift can be found (must exceed $1 / f$ noise level of oscillator). Thus, only moving objects can be detected.

Very cheap!, requires mainly only oscillator, duplexer, mixer, antenna, some amps and base-band signal processing

## References

[1] Albrecht Ludloff. Praxiswissen Radar und Radarsignalverarbeitung. 4. Aufl. Vieweg+Teubner Verlag, 2008.
[2] radartutorial.eu. URL: http://www.radartutorial.eu/index.html (besucht am 19.09. 2018).

## 17 Oscillators

## Oscillator

- A device that generates a (sinusoidal) signal
- Inner device usually into highly non-linear region
- Can be viewed as converter of DC-power to RF-power
- Required in each and every communication system element


## This Chapter Will Enable You To

- Understand and describe oscillator operation
- Select different oscillators types according to your application
- Name different strategies to obtain an oscillator
- Design a basic oscillator


## Oscillator in the System



- (Usually) oscillator at two locations (per branch) in the system
- required to provide a local signal
- usually phase locked to some derivation of the input signal (phase locked loop $=$ PLL)


### 17.1 Negative Resistance Oscillator

## Negative Resistance Oscillator



- Obtain a negative (differential/ small signal) resistance
- Negative resistance will de-attenuate the load resistor inside the resonator (res)

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\Gamma_{\text {res }} \geq \frac{1}{\Gamma_{i n}} \Rightarrow\left|\Gamma_{\text {in }}\right|>1 \quad \Gamma & =\frac{Z-Z_{0}}{Z+Z_{0}} \Leftrightarrow Z=Z_{0} \frac{1-\Gamma}{1+\Gamma} \\
\Rightarrow Z=\frac{1+\Gamma^{\prime}+j \Gamma^{\prime \prime}}{1-\Gamma^{\prime}-j \Gamma^{\prime \prime}}=\frac{1-\Gamma^{\prime 2}-\Gamma^{\prime \prime 2}+2 j \Gamma^{\prime \prime}}{\left(1-\Gamma^{\prime}\right)^{2}+\Gamma^{\prime \prime 2}}=\frac{1-|\Gamma|^{2}+2 j \Gamma^{\prime \prime}}{1+|\Gamma|^{2}-2 \Gamma^{\prime 2}}
\end{array}
$$

if $|\Gamma|>1$ then $\operatorname{Re}\{Z\}<0$ and so

$$
\begin{aligned}
& R_{\text {res }}+j X_{\text {res }}=-R_{i n}-j X_{\text {in }} \\
& G_{\text {res }}+j B_{\text {res }}=-G_{i n}-j B_{i n}
\end{aligned}
$$

- Negative (small signal) resistance contributes energy to the system


## Practical Negative Resistances: Gunn-Diode



- $n$-doped GaAs or $\ln \mathrm{P}$ (indirect semiconductor)
- Rise in electron mobility above certain field strength (Gunn-effect)
- Decrease in resistance (as shown)


## Gunn-Diode in Resonator II



- X-Band (12 GHz) Gunn-Diode in Waveguide
- Right: with resonator


## Gunn-Diode in Resonator II




- DC-characteristics of Gunn-Diode in resonator
- RF-Output power (a.u.) of RF-output power


### 17.2 Transistor-Negative Resistance Oscillators

## How to Unstabilize a Transistor?

An oscillator will never oscillate, an amplifier always.
Engineering saying

## How to Unstabilize a Transistor?

- Apply positive feedback to the transistor
- Usually done by adding inductance to source

- Calculation of 3-Port S-Parameters from given (Common Source) S-Parameters is required


## Three-Port Description of Transistor I



$$
\left(\begin{array}{l}
b_{1} \\
b_{2} \\
b_{3}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\hat{S}_{11} & \hat{S}_{12} & \hat{S}_{13} \\
\hat{S}_{21} & \hat{S}_{22} & \hat{S}_{23} \\
\hat{S}_{31} & \hat{S}_{32} & \hat{S}_{33}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{l}
a_{1} \\
a_{2} \\
a_{3}
\end{array}\right)
$$

$\widehat{S}_{i j}$ are the (to be derived) 3-Port S-Parameters.

## Three-Port Description of Transistor II

The sum over row and column must result unity:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\sum_{i=1}^{3} \hat{S}_{i j}=1 & j=1,2,3 \\
\sum_{j=1}^{3} \hat{S}_{i j}=1 & i=1,2,3
\end{array}
$$

This is because (without stray caps between ports) after Kirchhoff sum of currents must be zero:

$$
\sum_{j=1}^{3}\left(a_{i}-b_{i}\right)=0=\sum_{j=1}^{3}\left(a_{i}-\sum_{j=1}^{3} \hat{S}_{i j} a_{j}\right)
$$

now choose $a_{2}=a_{3}=0$

$$
\begin{aligned}
a_{1}-\sum_{j=1}^{3} \hat{S}_{i 1} a_{1} & =0 \\
\sum_{j=1}^{3} \hat{S}_{i 1} & =1
\end{aligned}
$$

## Three-Port Description of Transistor III

For second relation consider voltages at all ports are equal, so current at each port is zero. So $b_{i}=a_{i}=a$ and then

$$
b_{i}=\sum_{j=1}^{3} \hat{S}_{i j} a_{j}=\sum_{j=1}^{3} \hat{S}_{i j} a=a
$$

The voltage at port 3 (source) is $U_{3}=a_{3}+b_{3}$. So all other ports have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& U_{1}^{+}=a_{1}-\frac{U_{3}}{2}=a_{1}-\frac{a_{3}+b_{3}}{2} \\
& U_{1}^{-}=b_{1}-\frac{U_{3}}{2}=b_{1}-\frac{a_{3}+b_{3}}{2} \\
& U_{2}^{+}=a_{2}-\frac{U_{3}}{2}=a_{2}-\frac{a_{3}+b_{3}}{2} \\
& U_{2}^{-}=b_{2}-\frac{U_{3}}{2}=b_{2}-\frac{a_{3}+b_{3}}{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Three-Port Description of Transistor IV

so the port voltages are

$$
\begin{aligned}
& U_{1}=U_{1}^{+}+U_{1}^{-}=a_{1}+b_{1}-U_{3} \\
& U_{2}=U_{2}^{+}+U_{2}^{-}=a_{2}+b_{2}-U_{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

From 2-Port S-Parameters (common source) we still have

$$
\binom{U_{1}^{-}}{U_{2}^{-}}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
S_{11} & S_{12} \\
S_{21} & S_{22}
\end{array}\right)\binom{U_{1}^{+}}{U_{2}^{+}}
$$

Together with Kirchhoff's law we now have

$$
\begin{aligned}
b_{1}-\frac{a_{3}+b_{3}}{2} & =S_{11}\left(a_{1}-\frac{a_{3}+b_{3}}{2}\right)+S_{12}\left(a_{2}-\frac{a_{3}+b_{3}}{2}\right) \\
b_{2}-\frac{a_{3}+b_{3}}{2} & =S_{21}\left(a_{1}-\frac{a_{3}+b_{3}}{2}\right)+S_{22}\left(a_{2}-\frac{a_{3}+b_{3}}{2}\right) \\
0 & =a_{1}-b_{1}+a_{2}-b_{2}+a_{3}-b_{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Three-Port Description of Transistor V

with rewriting we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
b_{1} & =S_{11} a_{1}+S_{12} a_{2}+\sigma_{11} \frac{U_{3}}{2} \\
b_{2} & =S_{21} a_{1}+S_{22} a_{2}+\sigma_{22} \frac{U_{3}}{2} \\
b_{3} & =\frac{\sigma_{12}}{4-\sigma} a_{1}+\frac{\sigma_{21}}{4-\sigma} a_{2}+\frac{\sigma}{4-\sigma} a_{3} \\
\sigma_{11} & =1-S_{11}-S_{12} \\
\sigma_{22} & =1-S_{22}-S_{21} \\
\sigma_{12} & =1-S_{11}-S_{21} \\
\sigma_{21} & =1-S_{22}-S_{12} \\
\sigma & =S_{11}+S_{12}+S_{21}+S_{22}=2-\sigma_{12}-\sigma_{21}=2-\sigma_{11}-\sigma_{22}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Three-Port Description of Transistor VI

$$
\begin{aligned}
& b_{1}=\left(S_{11}+\frac{\sigma_{11} \sigma_{12}}{4-\sigma}\right) a_{1}+\left(S_{22}+\frac{\sigma_{11} \sigma_{21}}{4-\sigma}\right) a_{2}+\frac{2 \sigma_{11}}{4-\sigma} a_{3} \\
& b_{2}=\left(S_{21}+\frac{\sigma_{22} \sigma_{12}}{4-\sigma}\right) a_{1}+\left(S_{22}+\frac{\sigma_{22} \sigma_{21}}{4-\sigma}\right) a_{2}+\frac{2 \sigma_{22}}{4-\sigma} a_{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Three-Port Description of Transistor VII

and finally we have the 3 -port S-Parameters

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\hat{S}_{11}=S_{11}+\frac{\sigma_{11} \sigma_{12}}{4-\sigma} & \hat{S}_{12}=S_{12}+\frac{\sigma_{11} \sigma_{21}}{4-\sigma} & \hat{S}_{13}=\frac{2 \sigma_{11}}{4-\sigma} \\
\hat{S}_{21}=S_{21}+\frac{\sigma_{22} \sigma_{12}}{4-\sigma} & \hat{S}_{22}=S_{22}+\frac{\sigma_{22} \sigma_{21}}{4-\sigma} & \hat{S}_{23}=\frac{2 \sigma_{22}}{4-\sigma} \\
\hat{S}_{31}=\frac{2 \sigma_{12}}{4-\sigma} & \hat{S}_{32}=\frac{2 \sigma_{21}}{4-\sigma} & \hat{S}_{33}=\frac{\sigma}{4-\sigma}
\end{array}
$$

when setting $b_{3}=-a_{3}$ (short to ground at source) we get

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
S_{11}=\hat{S}_{11}-\frac{\hat{S}_{13} \hat{S}_{31}}{1+\hat{S}_{33}} & S_{12}=\hat{S}_{12}-\frac{\hat{S}_{13} \hat{S}_{32}}{1+\hat{S}_{33}} \\
S_{21}=\hat{S}_{21}-\frac{\hat{S}_{23} \hat{S}_{31}}{1+\hat{S}_{33}} & S_{22}=\hat{S}_{22}-\frac{\hat{S}_{23} \hat{S}_{32}}{1+\hat{S}_{33}}
\end{array}
$$

## Three-Port Description of Transistor VIII

when some impedance $Z_{S}$ is placed between source and ground, this is modelled by a reflection $\Gamma=$ $\left(Z_{S}-Z_{0}\right) /\left(Z_{S}+Z_{0}\right)$ and $a_{3}=\Gamma b_{3}$, in the new scattering matrix $\hat{S}_{33}+1$ must be replaced by $\hat{S}_{33}-1 / \Gamma$

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
S_{11}=\hat{S}_{11}-\frac{\hat{S}_{13} \hat{S}_{31} \Gamma}{\hat{S}_{33}-\Gamma} & S_{12}=\hat{S}_{12}-\frac{\hat{S}_{13} \hat{S}_{32} \Gamma}{\hat{S}_{33}-\Gamma} \\
S_{21}=\hat{S}_{21}-\frac{\hat{S}_{23} \hat{S}_{31} \Gamma}{\hat{S}_{33}-\Gamma} & S_{22}=\hat{S}_{22}-\frac{\hat{S}_{23} \hat{S}_{32} \Gamma}{\hat{S}_{33}-\Gamma}
\end{array}
$$

or

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\Gamma & =\frac{S_{11}-\hat{S}_{11}}{\hat{S}_{33} S_{11}-\Delta_{1}} & \text { with } \\
\Gamma & =\frac{\Delta_{1}}{}=\hat{S}_{11} \hat{S}_{22}-\hat{S}_{13} \hat{S}_{21} \\
\hat{S}_{33} S_{22}-\Delta_{2} & \text { with } & \Delta_{2}=\hat{S}_{22} \hat{S}_{33}-\hat{S}_{23} \hat{S}_{32}
\end{array}
$$

## Three-Port Description of Transistor IX

If we use the limit of passive (reactive) reflections with $|\Gamma|=1$ then $S_{11}, S_{22}$ are on a circle with

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { Center }_{11}=\frac{\hat{S}_{11}-\Delta_{1} \hat{S}_{33}^{*}}{1-\left|\hat{S}_{33}\right|^{2}} & \text { Radius }_{11}=\frac{\left|\hat{S}_{13} \hat{S}_{31}\right|}{1-\left|\hat{S}_{33}\right|^{2}} \\
\text { Center }_{22}=\frac{\hat{S}_{22}-\Delta_{2} \hat{S}_{33}^{*}}{1-\left|\hat{S}_{33}\right|^{2}} & \text { Radius }_{22}=\frac{\left|\hat{S}_{23} \hat{S}_{32}\right|}{1-\left|\hat{S}_{33}\right|^{2}}
\end{array}
$$

and these circles show what range of S-Parameters are possible.

## Three-Port Description of Transistor $\mathbf{X}$

Having derived the 3-port representation of a transistor, the Common Base (Gate) or Common Collector (Drain) 2-Port Parameters can be found by row and column exchange
Common Base/Gate (E/S=Port 1, C/D= Port 2, B/G= Port 3 (common)

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\hat{S}_{1 i}^{E / S}=\hat{S}_{3 i} & \hat{S}_{i 1}^{E / S}=\hat{S}_{i 3} & \hat{S}_{2 i}^{E / S}=\hat{S}_{2 i} \\
\hat{S}_{i 2}^{E / S}=\hat{S}_{i 2} & \hat{S}_{3 i}^{E / S}=\hat{S}_{1 i} & \hat{S}_{i 3}^{E / S}=\hat{S}_{i 1}
\end{array}
$$

Common Collector/Drain (B/G=Port 1, $\mathrm{E} / \mathrm{S}=$ Port 2, $\mathrm{C} / \mathrm{D}=$ Port 3 (common)

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\hat{S}_{1 i}^{C / D} & =\hat{S}_{1 i} & \hat{S}_{i 1}^{C / D}=\hat{S}_{i 1} \\
\hat{S}_{i 3}^{C / D} & =\hat{S}_{i 3} & \hat{S}_{3 i}^{C / D}=\hat{S}_{2 i}^{C / D}
\end{array}
$$

Use the new $\hat{S}^{C / D}$ or $\hat{S}^{E / S}$ to calculate the 2-Port parameters as in slide VIII

## Design of an Oscillator

Summary for design-procedure

- S-Parameter based steps (single frequency)

1. De-stabilize the transistor with source-feedback
2. Add Source (Base-side) RLC match, maximize for load-side reflection or selected negative resistance value

- S-Parameter based steps (frequency sweep)

1. Check frequency performance
2. Add resonator (model)
3. Add realistic parasitics and lines etc.

- Spice based steps

1. Add bias network (source-DC-ground)
2. Check output power

## Selection of Transistor and Operating Point


best $f_{T}$ reached for 4 V , maximum $I_{C} \leq 45 \mathrm{~mA}$, thus select $4 \mathrm{~V}, I_{C}=18 \mathrm{~mA}$ for linear operating point design.

## Design: De-Stablize



Source-feedback drives $S_{11}, S_{22}$ in Circles

## Stability Circles



Selected $C=1.3 \mathrm{pF}$ for deliverance of high reflection magnitude $\left(\left|S_{22}\right|\right)$.

## Select Best Source Reflection



Selected $R_{3}=27 \Omega, C_{3}=1.2 \mathrm{pF}$, delivers output resistance of $\operatorname{Re}\left\{Z_{\text {out }}\right\}=-150 \Omega$

## Frequency Response



### 17.3 Dielectric Resonator

## Resonator Improves Stability



## Add Bias-Network



Preparation for spice simulation, add DC-paths at source and current limiting resistor at DC-supply

## Final Result



Clear frequency shift ( 6 GHz ), Current limited

## Summary and Left-outs

- Design with linear and non-linear simulation OK
- Design-steps reliable
- Exact physical model of lines and resonator missing


### 17.4 Phase-Noise

## What is Phase Noise



Measured in $\mathrm{dBc} / \mathrm{Hz}$ at a certain distance from main carrier

## What is the Problem? Receiver



Effect of Blocking can occur

What is the Problem? Transmitter




Phasenoise and 60Hz frequency offset in 2560 samples for QPSK, 16-QAM, and 64-QAM.

Constellation are being disturbed, further problem: unwanted emission from transmitter (possibly unlawful)

## Limit Noise and Demodulate: PLL



Generic Phase locked loop

## PLL Calculations I

Modelling of disturbed oscillator:

$$
\Phi(t)=\omega t+\tilde{\phi}(t)=\omega t+K_{V C O} \int_{0}^{t} u(\tau) d \tau
$$

$K_{V C O}$ : constant gain

$$
\omega t+K_{V C O} \int_{0}^{t} u_{0} d \tau=\omega t+K_{V C O} u_{0} t=\left(\omega+K u_{0}\right) t
$$

$K /(2 \pi)$ frequency adjustment in $\mathrm{Hz} / \mathrm{V}$.

## PLL Calculations II

$$
V(j \omega)=\frac{K_{V C O}}{j \omega}
$$

First order loop filter

$$
G(j \omega)=\frac{1}{1+j \omega / \omega_{g}} .
$$

With $\tau>1 / \omega$ this is low pass with 20 dB per decade

## PLL Calculations III

Approximate $\sin \tilde{\phi} \approx \tilde{\phi}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(j \omega) & =\frac{K /(j \omega) \times G(j \omega)}{1+K /(j \omega) \times G(j \omega)} \\
& =\frac{K}{K+j \omega(1+j \omega \tau)} \\
& =\frac{K}{K+j \omega-\omega^{2} \tau}
\end{aligned}
$$

At output phase disturbance is

$$
\begin{aligned}
H^{\prime}(j \omega) & =\frac{1}{1+V(j \omega) G(j \omega)} \\
& =\frac{j \omega-\omega^{2} \tau}{K+j \omega-\omega^{2} \tau} .
\end{aligned}
$$

and all together we have

$$
\Delta \Theta_{o u t}=\frac{K}{K+j \omega-\omega^{2} \tau} \Delta \Theta_{T}+\frac{j \omega-\omega^{2} \tau}{K+j \omega-\omega^{2} \tau} \Delta \Theta_{V C O}
$$

## PLL Calculations IV

The corner frequencies are

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left|1+\frac{j \omega}{K}-\omega^{2} \frac{\tau}{K}\right|^{2}=2 \\
\Leftrightarrow\left(1+\frac{\omega^{2} \tau}{K}+\frac{\omega^{2}}{K^{2}}\right)=2 \\
\omega_{T P}= \pm \sqrt{\frac{1}{\tau}\left(\sqrt{2 K^{2}+\frac{K}{\tau}+\frac{1}{4 \tau^{2}}}-K-\frac{1}{2 \tau}\right)}
\end{gathered}
$$

## PLL Calculations V

$$
\begin{gathered}
\frac{\left|\frac{j \omega}{K}-\frac{\omega^{2} \tau}{K}\right|}{\left|1+\frac{j \omega}{K}-\omega^{2} \frac{\tau}{K}\right|}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\
\omega_{H P}= \pm \sqrt{\frac{1}{\tau}\left(K+\frac{1}{2 \tau}+\sqrt{2 K^{2}+\frac{1}{4 \tau^{2}}+\frac{K}{\tau}}\right)}
\end{gathered}
$$

as lower corner frequency of the high-pass
Result

- Low frequency deviation: LF reference oscillator dominates
- High frequency deviation: the VCO dominates


## SLIDE TEMPLATE


(a)

(b)

Simulation results for PLL

## References


[^0]:    Note that relative permeability for iron and $\mu$-metal cannot be maintained at high frequencies (that's why they are not used in RF-shielding)!

[^1]:    NEC: How is this Calculated?
    What is NEC 11 The Numerical Electromagnetics Code (NEC), credited to Gerald Burke, is an algorithm and generic computer application, originally written in FORTRAN. Developed in the 1970s, it is a popular antenna modeling method for wire and surface antennas. The code was made publicly available for general use and has subsequently been distributed for many computer platforms from mainframes to PCs.
    NEC models can include wires buried in a homogeneous ground, insulated wires and impedance loads. The code is based on the method of moments solution of the electric field integral equation for thin wires and the magnetic field integral equation for closed, conducting surfaces. The algorithm has no theoretical limit and can be applied to very large arrays or for detailed modeling of very small antenna systems.

    Models are defined as elements of wire or similar as an input text file (typically in ASCII). They are then input into the NEC application to generate tabular results. The results can
    then be input into subsequent 'helper' applications for visual viewing and the generation of other graphical representations as smith charts, etc.

[^2]:    ${ }^{1}$ Note this is only approximate, since relativity has been left out and velocity of observer and sender have not been distinctively covered. Further the Doppler shift applies twice: Target as receiver and as transmitter.

